The English Alphabet

Lesson One Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Two Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Three Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Review: Lessons 1, 2, and 3

Lesson Four Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Five Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Six Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Seven Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Eight Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Nine Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Ten Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Eleven Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Twelve Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Thirteen Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Fourteen Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Fifteen (A) Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Fifteen (B) Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Sixteen Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ

Lesson Sixteen Αα Ββ Ζζ Θθ Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ
Lesson Seventeen  第十七课  My Plan for the Summer

Lesson Eighteen  第十八课  An Announcement

Lesson Nineteen  第十九课  Toshio and Anna

Lesson Twenty  第二十课  A Flight Attendant

Lesson Twenty (B)  第二十课  Two Thieves

Lesson Twenty-One  第二十一课  A Day in the Country

Lesson Twenty-Two  第二十二课  My Family

Lesson Twenty-Three  第二十三课  A New Flat

Lesson Twenty-Four  第二十四课  Elvis Presley

Lesson Twenty-Five  第二十五课  Jack London

Lesson Twenty-Six  第二十六课  My Grandfather

Lesson Twenty-Seven (A)  第二十七课  Our Neighbor

Lesson Twenty-Seven (B)  第二十七课  The Temple God Eats Tsamba

Lesson Twenty-Eight  第二十八课  An Exciting Trip

Lesson Twenty-Nine  第二十九课  Trevor Portman

Lesson Thirty  第三十课  The Stolen Bicycle

Lesson Thirty-One  第三十一年  Western Europe
Lesson Thirty-Two (A)  第三十二课  A Taxi
Lesson Thirty-Two (B)  第三十二课  Donkey Butter
Lesson Thirty-Three  第三十三课  Tibetan Horse Races
Lesson Thirty-Four  第三十四课  Zhaxi Takes a Friend Home
Lesson Thirty-Five  第三十五课  Liz Visits a Tibetan Temple
Lesson Thirty-Six  第三十六课  King Song-tsen Gampo--Tibetan King
Lesson Thirty-seven  第三十七课  Wild Yaks
Lesson Thirty-eight  第三十八课  Hydatid Disease
Text Translation  课文翻译
Appendix 1  附录 1
Appendix 2  附录 2
Phonetics  语音
# The English Alphabet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ขยี</th>
<th>อังกฤษ</th>
<th>ฮานา</th>
<th>ขยี</th>
<th>อังกฤษ</th>
<th>ฮานา</th>
<th>ขยี</th>
<th>อังกฤษ</th>
<th>ฮานา</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>[ei]</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>[en]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>[bi:]</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>[əu]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>[si:]</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>[pi:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>[di:]</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>[kju:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>[i:]</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>[a:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>[ef]</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>[es]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>[dʒi:]</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>[ti:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>[eɪtʃ]</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>[ju:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>[ai]</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>[vi:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>[dʒei]</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>[ˈdæblju:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>[kei]</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>[eks]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>[el]</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>[wai]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>[em]</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>[zi:]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson One

New Words

lesson /'lesn/ n. 第一课
like /laɪk/ prep 第一课
one /waʊn/ adj. 一
work /wɜːk/ n. 工作
new /nuː/ adj. 新的
hard /hɑːd/ adj. 努力
word /wɜːd/ n. 单词
conversation /ˌkɒnvəˈserʃn/ n. 对话
I /aɪ/ pron. 我
good /ɡʊd/ adj. 好
am /əm/ vi. 是
teacher /ˈtiːtʃər/ n. 老师
a /ə/ art. (一) 个, (一) 位
drill /draɪl/ n. 练习
student /ˈstjuːdnt/ n. 学生
he /hi/ pron. 他
study /ˈstʌdi/ vt. 学习
she /ʃi/ pron. 她
English /ˈɛnɡliʃ/ n. 英语
several /ˈsevrəl/ adj. & n. (次), (个) 数

Text

I Study English

I am a student. 我是个学生。

I study English. 我学习英语。

I like English. 我喜欢英语。

I work hard. 我努力工作。
Conversation

A. Good morning, Zhaxi. 扎西，早上好。
B. Good morning, Teacher. 老师，早上好。

Drills

(A)
—I am a student. 我是个学生。
—He is a student. 他是学生。
—She is a student. 她是个学生。
—Mary is a student. 玛丽是个学生。

(B)
—I am a teacher. 我是个教师。
—He is a teacher. 他是教师。
—She is a teacher. 她是个教师。
—Peter is a teacher. 皮特是个教师。

Exercises

1. Read the new words. 阅读新单词。
2. Read the text several times. 把课文读几遍。
3. Do the drills. 完成练习。
4. Learn the conversation. 学习对话。
5. Learn the English alphabet. 学习英语字母。

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii Jj Kk Ll Mm Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr Ss Tt Uu Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz
6. Spell the words in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>L-e-s-s-o-n</th>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>O-n-e</th>
<th>One</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n-e-w</td>
<td>new</td>
<td>w-o-r-d</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-e-x-t</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>a-m</td>
<td>am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-t-u-d-e-n-t</td>
<td>student</td>
<td>s-t-u-d-y</td>
<td>study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-n-g-l-i-s-h</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>l-i-k-e</td>
<td>like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w-o-r-k</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>h-a-r-d</td>
<td>hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c-o-n-v-e-r-s-a-t-i-o-n</td>
<td>conversation</td>
<td>g-o-o-d</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m-o-r-n-i-n-g</td>
<td>morning</td>
<td>t-e-a-c-h-e-r</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d-r-i-l-l</td>
<td>drill</td>
<td>h-e</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-h-e</td>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Copy the English alphabet.

A. Capital letters.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

B. Small letters.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
Lesson Two

New Words

two /tu:/ adj. 二
are /ə:/ v. 是
my /mə/ pron. 我的
you /juː/ pron 你，你们
sister /ˈsɪstə/ n. 姐妹
go /ɡoʊ/ v. 不，不是
is /ɪz/ v. 是
not /nɔt/ adj. 不，没，不是
too /tuː/ adj. 也
soldier /ˈsɔldər/ n. 军人
brother /ˈbrʌðər/ n. 兄弟
doctor /ˈdɒktər/ n. 医生，大夫
father /ˈfɑːðər/ n. 爸爸，父亲

nurse /ˈnɜːs/ n. 护士
worker /ˈwɜːkər/ n. 工人
your /jɔːr/ pron 你的，你们的
mother /ˈmʌðər/ n. 妈妈，母亲
engineer /ˌendʒɪˈniər/ n. 工程师
afternoon /ˈɑːftən/ n. 下午
technician /ˈteknɪʃən/ n. 术人员
comrade /ˈkɒmreɪd/ n. 同志
farmer /ˈfɑːmər/ n. 农民
I am a student. 我是学生。

My sister is a student, too. 我妹妹也是学生。

My brother is a teacher. 我哥哥是教师。

My father is a worker. 我爸爸是工人。

My mother is a farmer. 我妈妈是农民。

Conversation

A. Good afternoon, Losang. 洛桑，下午好。

B. Good afternoon, Zhaxi. 扎西，下午好。

Drills

(A)
—Are you a student? 你是学生吗？
—Yes, I am. I am a student. 是的，我是学生。

—Are you a teacher? 你是教师吗？
—No, I am not. I am not a teacher. I am a student. 不，我不是教师，我是个学生。

(B)
—Is he a student? 他是学生吗？
—No, he isn’t. He’s a soldier. 不，他不是，他是个军人。

—Is she a doctor? 她是医生吗？
—No, she isn’t. She is a nurse. 不，她不是，她是个护士。

—Is your brother a worker? 你哥哥是工人吗？
—No, he isn’t. He is an engineer. 不，他不是，他是个工程师。

—Is your sister an engineer, too? 你姐姐也是工程师吗？
—No, she isn’t. She’s a technician. 不，她不是，她是个技术人员。
Exercises

1) Read the new words several times.

2) Read the text several times.

3) Do the drills.

4) Learn the conversation.

5) Review the English alphabet.

6) Spell the new words.

7) Learn the ABC song.
Lesson Three

New Words

three /ɔːri:/ num. 三

girl /gɜːl/ n. 女孩，姑娘

three /θriː/ num.

girl /gɜːl/ n. 女孩，姑娘

middle /ˈmɪdl/ adj. & n. 中间，当中，中央

old /əʊld/ adj. 年老的

me /mi:/ pron. 我

man /mæn/ n. 男人

college /ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ n. 学院

woman /ˈwʊmən/ n. 女人

who /huː/ pron. 谁

young /ˈjʌŋ/ adj. 年轻的

what /wɒt/ pron. 什么

elder /ˈeldə/ n. (两人中)年龄较大的

evening /ˈiːvnɪŋ/ noun. 傍晚，晚上
This is a picture of my family. The old man is my father. He is an engineer. The old woman is my mother. She is a doctor. The young woman is my elder sister. She is a teacher. The girl is my younger sister. She is a school-girl. The boy is my younger brother. He is a middle school student. This young man is me. I am a college student.

Conversation

A. Good evening, students.

B. Good evening, teacher.

Drills

(A)
Who is the old man?
—Who is she?
—Who is he?
—Who is the young woman?

(B)
—What is your mother's job?
—Is your father a doctor, too?
—Is your elder sister a nurse?
—What is her job?
Exercises

1. Read the new words several times. 把新单词读几遍。

2. Read the text several times. 把课文读几遍。

3. Answer the questions about the text. 回答下列问题。

   1) What is this? ___________________________________________________________________

   2) Is this a picture of your family? ________________________________________________

   3) Who is the old man? __________________________________________________________________

   4) What is he? __________________________________________________________________

   5) Is this your mother? __________________________________________________________________

   6) What is she? __________________________________________________________________

   7) Who is the young woman? __________________________________________________________________

   8) Is she a student? __________________________________________________________________

   9) Who is the young man? __________________________________________________________________

  10) Are you a student? __________________________________________________________________

  11) Who is the boy? __________________________________________________________________

  12) Is he a college student? __________________________________________________________________

  13) Who is the young girl? __________________________________________________________________

  14) Is she a college student? __________________________________________________________________

4. Do the drills. 完成练习。

5. Turn the sentences into questions. 把下列句子变成疑问句。

   1) This is a picture. (Is this a picture?) ______________________________________________

   2) The girl is a nurse. ___________________________________________________________

   3) The young man is a technician _________________________________________________

   4) I am an engineer. _____________________________________________________________

   5) My elder sister is a doctor. _____________________________________________________

   6) This is my family. ______________________________________________________________

   7) This is a middle school. ________________________________________________________

   8) This is Lesson Three. __________________________________________________________
6. Write the questions for the answers. 根据答案写问题。

1) What is it? (It's a picture)

2) ________________________________________________
   (He’s my father.)

3) ________________________________________________
   (He’s an engineer.)

4) ________________________________________________ mother?
   (Yes, it is.)

5) ________________________________________________
   (She is a doctor.)

6) ________________________________________________
   (She is my elder sister.)

7) ________________________________________________
   (No, she isn’t. She is a teacher.)

8) ________________________________________________ young man?
   (It’s me.)

9) ________________________________________________
   (Yes, I am. I am a college student.)

10) ________________________________________________
    (He’s my younger brother.)

11) ________________________________________________
    (No, he isn’t. He is a middle school student.)

12) ________________________________________________ young
    (She is my younger sister.)

13) ________________________________________________
    (No, she isn't. She's a school-girl.)
Review: Lessons 1, 2, and 3

New Words

horse /hɔːs/ n. 马
cold /kəuld/ n. 寒冷
king /kɪŋ/ n. 大王，国王
Tibetan /ˈtɪbetən/ adj. & n. 藏族人，藏语，藏族的
German /dʒəmən/ adj. & n. 德国人，德语
French /fræns, fræns/ n. 法语，法国人
watch (wristwatch) /wɔtʃ/ n. 手表
chair /tʃeə/ n. 椅子
map /mæp/ n. 地图
blackboard /ˈblækbɔːd/ n. 黑板
desk /desk/ n. 桌子
clock /klɒk/ n. (时)钟
wall /wɔːl/ n. 墙
classroom /ˈklaːsruːm; -rum/ n. 教室
other /ˈʌðə/ adj. & pron. 其他
correct /kəˈrekt/ adj. 正确的
Exercises

1. Write the correct *to be* verb (is, am, are) in the blanks below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) I _______ a student.</td>
<td>1) We ______ students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) You ______ a student.</td>
<td>2) You ______ students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) He ______ a student.</td>
<td>3) They ______ students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) She ______ a student</td>
<td>4) They ______ students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5) It _______ a horse.</td>
<td>5) They ______ horses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Write the correct *to be* verb (is, am, are) in the blanks below.

| 1) I ______ a _________. | 2) They ______ t________. |
| 3) You ________ a _________. | 4) You _______ s__________ |
| 5) Losang __________ a _________. | 6) Beima __________ a _________. |
| 7) Beima and Losang _______ s________. |

3. Read these questions and answer with a partner.

1) Are you a student?

_________________________________

2) Is he a student?

_________________________________

3) Is she a student?

_________________________________

4) Is that a horse?

_________________________________

5) Are we students?

_________________________________

6) Are you students?

_________________________________

7) Are they students?

_________________________________
4. Do this exercise in pairs. One person asks questions and the other answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Are</th>
<th>you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Answer the questions.

1) Is he a king? __________________.
2) Am I a teacher? __________________.
3) Are they students? ________________.
4) Is she a student? __________________.
5) Are you a king? __________________.

6. Write these words.

s__________________________
t__________________________
h__________________________
k__________________________

7. Fill in the blanks using pronouns.

1) _______ am a student.
2) _______ is a student.
3) _______ is a student.
4) _______ is a horse.
5) _______ are teachers.
6) _______ are a teacher.
8. Fill in the blanks using forms of the verbs that are given.

用下列动词的正确形式填空。

- **speak**
  1) I ___________ Tibetan.  5) We ___________ Tibetan.
  2) You ___________ English.  6) You ___________ English.
  3) He ___________ German.  7) They ___________ French.
  4) She ___________ Chinese.

- **study**
  1) We ___________ Chinese.  4) She ___________ Tibetan.
  2) I ___________ English.  5) They ___________ every day.
  3) He ___________ French.  6) You ___________ Tibetan.

- **have**
  1) I ___________ a pen.  4) They ___________ watches.
  2) We ___________ a good teacher.  5) He ___________ a book.
  3) She ___________ a horse.  6) It ___________ big eyes.

9. Ask and answer questions with your partner.

与自己的搭档问答下列问题。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>Does</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>have...?</th>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>do.</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>does.</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>they</th>
<th>do.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do I they</td>
<td>have...?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I we do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he she it does.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you they do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Do you speak Tibetan?  Yes, __________________________.
2) Do they have two watches?  Yes, __________________________.
3) Do I teach English?  __________________________.
4) Does she have a horse?  __________________________.
5) Does it have big eyes?  __________________________.
6) Do you have a pen?  __________________________.
7) Does he study German?  __________________________.
10. Look at the pictures and learn the sentences below.

列句子。

1) There is a chair in the classroom.
2) There is a map on the wall.
3) There is a blackboard on the wall.
4) There is a map and a blackboard on the wall.
5) There is a desk in the classroom.
6) There is a clock on the desk.
7) There is a book on the desk.

11. Answer the questions.

1) Is there a chair in the classroom?__________________________________________.
2) Is there a book on the desk? ____________________________________________.
3) Is there a map on the wall? ____________________________________________.
4) Is there a clock on the desk? ____________________________________________.
Lesson Four

New Words

four /fɔː/ num. 四

child(ren) /tʃaɪld/, /tʃaɪldrən/ n. 孩子

friend /frend/ n. 朋友

son /sʌn/ n. 儿子

from /frəm; frəm/ vt. 从...

daughter /ˈdɔːta/ n. 女孩, 女儿

England /ˈɛŋɡld/ n. 英国

year /jɪə/ n. 年, 年龄

professor /praˈfesər/ n. 教授

London /ˈlændən/ n. 伦敦

only /ˈəʊnli/ adj. 只, 仅仅, 才

lovely /ˈlʌvli/ adj. 可爱的, 有趣的

scientist /ˈsaɪəntɪst/ n. 科学家

hello, hi /ˈhɛloʊ/ /ˈhaɪ/ interj 喂, 你好

married /ˈmærɪd/ adj. 已婚的

glad /ɡlæd/ adj. 高兴

husband /ˈhʌzbənd/ n. 丈夫

meet /miːt/ v. 遇见, 相识

in /ɪn/ prep. 里

where /weə/ adj. 哪儿
China /ˈtsaɪmə/ noun 中国

how /haʊ/ adv, conj 怎样, 如何

compare /kəmˈpeə/ verb 比较

two /tuː/ noun. 两个

rule /ruːl/ noun. 规则，规律
everyday /ˈevriːdi/ adj. 每天

food /fuːd/ n. 食物

dog /dɒɡ/ noun. 狗

storybook /ˈstəriˈbʊk/ n. 故事书

interesting /ˈɪntrəstɪŋ/ adj. 有趣的，令人关注的

more /mɔː/ adv. 更多，更

room /ruːm; rʊm/ n. 房间

number /ˈnʌmbə/ vt. 号码

mine /maɪn/ pron. 我的

theirs /ðeəz/ pron. 他们的

live (live in) /lɪv/ vi. 居住

usually /ˈjuːʒuəli; -əli/ adj. 通常

apple /ˈæpl/ noun 苹果

uncle /ˈʌŋkl/ n. 伯父，叔父，舅父，姑丈，姨丈
Text

Nancy’s Family

This is my friend Nancy. She is from England. Her father is a professor. He is in London. Her mother is a scientist. She is in London, too.

Nancy is married. Her husband, John, is in China, too. They have two children, a son and a daughter. Her son is only two years old and her daughter is four. They are lovely children.

Conversation

A. Hello, Tom. 嗨，汤姆。

B. Hi, Betty. 嗨，贝蒂。

A. This is my sister, Helen. 这是我妹妹海伦。

B. Glad to meet you. 很高兴见到你。

C. Glad to meet you. 很高兴见到你。

Drills

(A)

—Is your father in Lhasa?
—No, he isn’t.
—Where is he?
—He’s in Amdo.

a) your sister, Chengdu, Kunming.
b) your husband, Xining, Gannan.
c) Nancy’s father, China, England.

(B)

—Where are you from?
—I’m from Kham.
—Is Zhoma from Kham, too?
—No, she isn’t. She’s from Amdo.

a) Mary, London, husband, Sheffield.
b) your father, Sichuan, mother, Yunnan.
c) Lhamo, Gansu, Beima, Lhasa.
d) Peter, England, Helen, the U.S.A
Exercises

1. Read the new words several times. 把新单词读几遍。

2. Read the text several times. 把课文读几遍。

3. Answer these question: 回答问题。
   1) Who is Nancy? ________________________________________________
   2) Where is she from? _____________________________________________
   3) What’s her father? _____________________________________________
   4) Where is he? _________________________________________________
   5) Is her mother a professor? _____________________________________
   6) Where is she? _________________________________________________
   7) Is Nancy married? _____________________________________________
   8) Who’s her husband? ____________________________________________
   9) Is John in China? _____________________________________________
   10) Do they have any children? ____________________________________
   11) How old are they? ____________________________________________
   12) Are they lovely? _____________________________________________

4. Do the drills. 完成练习。

5. Turn the sentences into questions. 把下列句子变成疑问句。
   1) John is Nancy’s husband. Is Nancy's husband John?
   2) Nancy is from England. ________________________________________
   3) Their daughter is four. _________________________________________
   4) Their children are in China. _____________________________________
   5) Nancy’s mother is a scientist. ____________________________________
   6) Nancy’s father is a professor. ____________________________________

6. Write questions for the answers. 根据答案写问题。
   1) Who is she? (She is my friend.)
   2) __________________________? (She’s from England.)
   3) __________________________? (He’s a professor.)
   4) __________________________? (He’s in London.)
5) ____________________________? (No, she isn’t. She is a scientist.)
6) ____________________________? (She’s in London, too)
7) ____________________________? (Yes, she is.)
8) ____________________________? (John is her husband.)
9) ____________________________? (Yes, he is.)
10) ____________________________? (Yes, they do.)
11) ____________________________? (Their son is two. Their daughter is four.)
12) ____________________________? (Yes, they are.)

7. Fill in the blanks using pronouns.

1) _______ speaks Tibetan. I study with _______. This is ______ book.

2) ___ teach Tibetan. You study with _______. ___ name is Tom.

3) ____ is from Qinghai. You know _______. _____ name is Zhoma.

4) _______ live in Xining. You see _____ everyday. You buy _____ food.

5) _______ are a student. I study with _______. That is _____ book.

8. Turn the sentences into general questions. Move is or are to the front of the sentence. If am is in the sentence, begin the question
1) This is a picture. ____________________________?

2) The girl is a nurse. ____________________________?

3) The young man is a technician. ____________________________?

4) I am an engineer. ____________________________?

5) My elder sister is a doctor. ____________________________?

6) This is a middle school. ____________________________?

7) This is my family. ____________________________?

8) This is Lesson Three. ____________________________?

9) I am from Dege. ____________________________?

10) They are sisters. ____________________________?

11) They are Tibetan. ____________________________?

12) You are a student. ____________________________?

9. Making questions: If the verb ends in s, begin the question with *Does*. If the verb does not end in s, begin the question with *Do*. If the sentence uses *has*, begin the question with *Does* and replace *has* with *have*. If the sentence uses *have*, begin the question with *Do* and keep *have* in the question.

Turn the sentences below into questions.

1) I see your red bag. Do you see my red bag?

2) The girls study English every day. _____________________________________________

3) The boys work hard. ________________________________________________________

4) We come to school at half past seven. __________________________________________

5) I have many books. ________________________________________________________

6) Peter likes zamba. ________________________________________________________
7) They live in Chengdu. ______________________________________________________
8) Losang has two brothers. __________________________________________________
9) Losang and Dorji speak English. ____________________________________________
10) Beima speaks Tibetan. ____________________________________________________

10. Turn the sentences into questions. 把下列句子变成疑问句。

1) I see your red bag. Do you _______________ my __________________? 
2) The girls study English every day. Do ______________________________? 
3) The boys work hard. ______________________________? 
4) We come to school at half past seven. ______________________________? 
5) I have many books. ______________________________? 
6) Zhaxi likes zamba. ______________________________? 
7) Beima speaks Tibetan. ______________________________? 

11. Read the pronouns. 阅读代词。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Personal Pronouns</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>you (you)</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>you (you)</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Possessive Pronouns</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>your (you)</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>your (you)</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12. Fill in the blanks with the correct pronouns. 用适当的代词填空。

1) Where is Nancy? I want to give the clock to ________. 
2) I like that book. Please, give it to ________. 
3) I can't see Bob. Where is ___.
4) Uncle Dunba is very poor and the King is not good to ________.
5) The food is tasty. I like ____.
6) Mary and Tom like to swim. ______ usually go swimming together.
7) It's Tom's book. Dorji gives ________ to ________.
8) I read those two books. I like ________.
9) Bob took pictures of Mary and [I / me]. We like ________.
10) Mary and I are studying English. ____________ like to study English.
11) Mary lives in Xining. _________ likes this city.

12) We asked Tom to give the book to Zhoma but _____ didn't give _____ to _____.

13) I want some more rice. Please bring the bowl to __________.

14) Tom has many books. It's also ________ book.

15) Mary's jacket is the blue one. ______ likes that jacket very much.

16) Tom and I live together and this is ________ apartment.

17) I need to call Dorji and Losang. Could you tell me ________ phone number?

18) Bob and you have a little dog. ______ little dog is very lovely.

19) Mary and I have storybooks, but _______ books are more interesting.

20) We live in the same room and ________ room number is 305

13. Pronouns 代词。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd M</th>
<th>3rd F</th>
<th>3rd N</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive 1</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive 2</td>
<td>mine</td>
<td>yours</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>hers</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>ours</td>
<td>yours</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

M = masculine  男性  F = feminine 女性  N = neuter 中性

- After a preposition [to, for, from, with, by] always use the object pronoun.
- Possessive 2: use alone, to express possession. That book is mine. The last apple is yours.
Lesson Five

第五课

New Words

five /farv/ num.

五

these /ðiːz/ pron. นี่ๆ 這些

we /wi:/ pron. 们 我们

see /si:/ vt. & vi. คิด รับรู้ รู้ ดู ดู

看见

map /mæp/ n. แผน 地图

a lot of นี่ๆ  许多，很多

pencil /ˈpensl/ n. 铅笔

radio /ˈreidiəʊ/ n. หูฟัง สื่อสาร รับบัตร ซับบอร์ด รับ

收音机

thing /θɪŋ/ n. รู้ ความสุข

东西

book /bʊk/ n. หนังสือ 书 书籍，本，册

them /ðəm; ðəm/ pron. 们 他们

very /ˈvɛri/ adj. มาก นิสัย

很，非常

pen /pen/ n. ปากกา สี

钢笔

well /wel/ n. ความสุข

好，非常，完全地

and /ænd; ənd; ænd/ conj. แล้ว แต่ และ และ

和，与，及

thank /θæŋk/ n. ขอบคุณ

谢谢，感谢

fine /fain/ adj. ดี

健康愉快的，美好的，优秀的
Text

What Are in These Pictures?

Look at these pictures. We see a lot of things in them. This is a pen and this is a pencil. This is a clock and that is a watch. What do you see in the other four pictures? We see a map, a picture, a radio and four books in them.

Conversation

A. How are you? 你好吗？

B. Very well, thank you. And you? 好，谢谢，你呢？

A. Fine. Thank you. 好，谢谢。

Drills

(A)

—Is this a pen?
   —Yes, it is.
—Is this a pen, too?
   —No, it isn’t. It’s a pencil.
   a) a clock, a watch.
   c) a radio, a book.
   b) a picture, a map.
   d) your book, her book.

(B)

—Is this Mary?
   —No, she isn’t.
—Who is she?
   —She is Nancy.
   a) Peter, he, Tom
   c) Rose, she, Helen
   b) Mr. Lee, he, Mr. Smith
   d) Miss White, she, Mrs. Green
Exercises

1. Read the new words several times.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) What do you see in this picture? I see a pen in it.
   2) Is this a pen, too? _________________________________________________
   3) What’s this? ______________________________________________________
   4) Is that a clock, too? _______________________________________________
   5) Is this a picture? __________________________________________________
   6) Is that a picture, too? ______________________________________________
   7) What do you see in this picture? _____________________________________
   8) Is that a radio, too? ________________________________________________
   9) Are these books, too? ______________________________________________
  10) How many books do you see in this picture? _________________
      __________________________________________________________________
  11) Do you see a lot of things in these pictures? ____________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Turn these sentences into questions.
   1) This is my younger brother. Is this your younger brother?
   2) That girl is Mary’s elder sister. _______________________________________
   3) They are Mr. Green’s children. _________________________________________
   4) These two boys are college students. ____________________________________
   5) This is my watch. ___________________________________________________
   6) That is Jane’s radio. _________________________________________________
   7) These are Zhaxi’s books. ____________________________________________
   8) These young men are Tom’s friends. ____________________________________
   9) This is my mother. __________________________________________________
  10) They are from my school. _____________________________________________
  11) These two girls are students. ___________________________________________
6. Fill in the blanks with pronouns: (用适当的代词填空)

1) __ sister is a nurse. __ husband is a doctor.

2) __brother is an engineer. __ wife is a technician.

3) Are ___ a teacher? Are they ____ students?

4) ____ are my friends. ____ children are my students.

5) These are __ children. __ are school-boys. Is this ___ book? What’s ___ name? Are these books? No, ____ are not ___ books but Jane’s books.

7. Talk about the pictures: (看图说英语)

1) Who is this woman? She’s Helen.

2) What is she?____________________________________________________

3) Is that woman a nurse, too?______________________________________

4) What’s her name?________________________________________________

5) Who is this young man?__________________________________________

6) What is he?_____________________________________________________

7) Is the other man a worker?________________________________________

8) What’s his name?________________________________________________
Lesson Six

New Words

six /sɪks/ num. 六
both /bəθ/ a. 两者，双方，俩
live /lɪv/ vi. 居住
twenty /ˈtwenti/ num. 二十
room /ruːm; rom/ n. 房间
come /kʌm/ vi. 来，到达
all /ɔːl/ a. & ad. 全部，总的
new /njuː/ a. 新的
Chinese /ˌtsaɪˈniːz/ 汉语

seventeen /ˈsevnˈtiːn/ num. 十七
people /ˈpiːpl/ n. 人（复数）
eighteen /ˈeɪtʃiːn/ num. 十八
those /ðəʊz/ 那些
year /jɪər/ n. 年，年龄
Japanese /dʒəˈpiːniːz/ 日语，日本人

old /əʊld/ a. 年老的

Text

The Girls

Four girls live in this room. Two of them study English. The other two study Tibetan. They are all very young.

Zhoma is a new student. She is seventeen. She studies English. Yangzom is a new student, too, but she studies Tibetan. She is eighteen this year. Dekey and Lhamo are old students. They are both twenty. One studies Tibetan and the other studies English.

Conversation

A. Come and meet my friend. This is Mrs. Lake. This is Miss Zhoma.
B. How do you do, Mrs. Lake?
C. How do you do, Miss Zhoma?

A. 请进来和我的朋友见面。这是Mrs. Lake。这是Miss Zhoma。
B. 你好，Mrs. Lake。
C. 你好，Miss Zhoma。

•32•
Drills
(A)
—Do you speak English?
—Yes, we do.
—Do they speak English?
—No, they don’t. They speak German.

a) The boys, the girls, Tibetan.
b) These people, those people, Japanese.
c) The Smiths, the Michaels, French.
d) The teachers, the school-boys, Chinese.

(B)
—Do you have a pen?
—Yes, I do.
—Does Tom have a pen?
—No, he doesn’t. He doesn’t have a pen.

a) You, radio, Helen
b) They, a daughter, Mr. Brown
c) The girls, a picture-book, boy
d) The Johnsons, a new clock, Nancy

Exercises
1. Read the new words several times.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions.
   1) Who live in this room? ________________________________.
   2) What do they study? ________________________________.
   3) What do the other two study? ________________________________.
   4) Are the girls very young? ________________________________.
   5) Who is Zhoma? ________________________________.
   6) Is she a new student? ________________________________.
   7) How old is she? ________________________________.
   8) What does she study? ________________________________.
   9) Does Yangdzom study English, too? ________________________________.
  10) How old is Yangdzom? ________________________________.
11) Are Dekey and Lhamo new students? ________________________________________.
12) How old are they? ________________________________________________________.
13) What do they study? ________________________________________________________.

4. Do the drills.

5. Turn these sentences into questions.
   1) These are Helen’s books. (Whose books are these?)
   2) Henry has a new radio. ____________________________________________________
   3) I see an old man in the picture. ____________________________________________
   4) Jane has a pen in her hand. ________________________________________________
   5) My elder child is six. _____________________________________________________
   6) My mother is very well. __________________________________________________
   7) The boys live in Room 214. ______________________________________________
   8) Nancy comes from England. ______________________________________________

6. Fill in the blanks with me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them.
   1) I’m glad to meet ___.
   2) I don’t see ___ in the room. Where is he?
   3) We all like ___. It is a good book.
   4) Come and see ___ this evening.
   5) Three of ___ study German. They don’t study English.
   6) Thank ___. All of ___ work hard.
   7) Both of ___ like the picture.
   8) My friend Mary is here. Come and meet ___.

7. Learn these sentences.
   (A)
   • I am a Tibetan.
   • You are a Tibetan.
   • She (He) is a Tibetan.
   • We are Tibetan.
   • You are Tibetan.
   • They are Tibetan.
   (B)
   • I study English.
   • You study English.
   • He (She) studies English.
   • We study English.
8. Write questions for the answers.

1) Who live in this room? (Four girls live in this room.)

2) __________________________________________________? (Two of them study English.)

3) ________________________________________________? (They study Tibetan.)

4) ___________________________________________ young? (Yes, they are.)

5) ________________________________________________? (She is one of the girls.)

6) ___________________________________________ new ______________? (Yes, she is.)

7) ________________________________________________? (She is seventeen.)

8) ________________________________________________? (She studies English.)

9) ________________________________________________? (No, she doesn’t. She studies Tibetan.)

10) ________________________________________________? (She is eighteen this year.)

11) ________________________________________________? (No, they aren't. They are old students.)

12) ________________________________________________? (They are both twenty.)

13) ________________________________________________? (One of them studies Tibetan and the other studies English.)

9. Turn these sentences into questions that begin with a wh- word. The wh- words are where, what, who, where, when, why, which.

1) John is Nancy’s husband. Who is John?

2) Nancy is from England. ____________________________________________?

3) Their daughter is four. ____________________________________________?

4) Their children are in China. ________________________________________?

5) Nancy's mother is a scientist. ________________________________________?

6) Nancy's father is a professor. ________________________________________?

7) The students are Tibetan. ___________________________________________?
Lesson Seven

New Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>seven</td>
<td>/ˈsevn/</td>
<td>七</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get along</td>
<td>与（某人）保持良好关系</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American</td>
<td>/ˈamerikən/</td>
<td>美国人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>/help/</td>
<td>帮助</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university</td>
<td>/juːnəˈvɜːsəti/</td>
<td>大学</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>each other</td>
<td>互相</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>major (in)</td>
<td>专业</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>/lɜːn/</td>
<td>学习</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art</td>
<td>/ɑːt/</td>
<td>艺术</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>history</td>
<td>/ˈhɪstri/</td>
<td>历史</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excuse</td>
<td>/ɪkˈskjuːs/</td>
<td>原谅</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interested</td>
<td>/ɪnˈtrəstɪd/</td>
<td>感兴趣的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>/neɪm/</td>
<td>名字</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>/ˈsʌbdʒɪkt/</td>
<td>学科，科目</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nine</td>
<td>/naɪn/</td>
<td>九</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

America /ˈamerɪka/ noun. 美国
Central Nationalities University 中央民族大学
why /waɪ/ ad. 为什么
with /wɪð/ prep. 与（一起），同，跟；（某物）旁边
because /bɪˈkɔz/ conj. 因为
different /ˈdɪfrənt/ a. 不同的
or /ɔː/ conj. 或
City /ˈsɪti/ city 城市
translate /trænzˈleɪt/ vt. 翻译
alternative /ɔːlˈtɑːnətɪv/ adj. 可选择的
guitar /ˈgɪtrə/ noun. 吉他
cousin /ˈkʌzn/ noun. 堂（堂）兄弟，堂（表）姐妹
Australia /ˈstreılıə/ n. 澳大利亚
nice (Nice to meet you.) /nais/ a. 惊讶的

John Turner

John Turner is an American. He comes from Boston and studies at our university. He majors in Chinese history. He is very interested in this subject.

He lives in Room 309 with two other boys. They are all Americans, but they come from different cities. They get along well. They help each other and learn from each other.

Conversation

A. Excuse me. Is your name Paul Roberts?
B. Yes. it is.
A. Oh good! I’m Sally Jones. How do you do?
B. How do you do?
A. 
B. 
A. 请问，您的名字叫罗伯茨吗？
B. 是的。
A. 哦，您好！我是萨莉。
B. 你好！

Drills

(A)

— Do you have any brothers?
— Yes, I do.
— How many brothers do you have?
— I have two.
a) sisters, two.
b) English books, five
—Does Helen live here?  
—No, she doesn’t.  
—Where does she live?  
—She lives in Room 204.

a) your sister, work, in a middle school.  
b) Mary, study, in Tibet University.  
c) Professor Zhaxi, work, in Central Nationalities University.  
d) Peter, come from England, America.

**Exercises**

1. Read the new words several times.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) Who is John Turner? (He is an American student.)
   2) Where does he come from? ____________________________________________
   3) Where does he study? _________________________________________________
   4) What does he major in? ________________________________________________
   5) Why does he study it? _________________________________________________
   6) Where does he live? __________________________________________________
   7) How many students live in this room? ____________________________________
   8) Are the other two Americans, too? ______________________________________
   9) Do they come from Boston? ____________________________________________
  10) How do they get along (with each other)? _________________________________
  11) Do they help each other? ______________________________________________
  12) They learn from each other too, don’t they? _______________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Complete the sentences with the words given below. (用括号里的词完成下列句子。)

   1) What’s this (that)? It’s a __________. (clock, ...)
   2) What are these (those)? They’re _______. (clocks, ...)
   3) What does he do? He’s a (an) __________. (teacher, ...)
   4) What do they do (are they)? They’re _______. (workers, ...)
6. Form alternative questions.

1) Mr. Brown, be, an engineer, a technician. Is Mr. Brown an engineer or a technician?

2) My child, be, a boy, a girl.

3) Those young women, be, teachers, students.


5) Helen, have, son, daughter.

6) Caireng, come from, Amdo, Kham.

7) I, work in Qinghai University, Beijing University

8) The girls, live in, this room, that room.

7. Read aloud.

—Are you from China?
—Yes, I am. Where are you from?
—I’m from France. From Paris. Do you speak French?
—I can only speak a few words, but I like French. I want to learn it.
—Let me help you. You can teach me Tibetan.
—We can help each other.

8. Copy Exercise 7 and translate it into Tibetan.

9. Turn the sentences into alternative questions using or.

Example: Do you play basketball or football? Are they English students or math students?

1) Mr. Brown, be, an engineer, a technician

2) My child, be, a boy, a girl

3) The Greens, be, from England, America

4) Those young women, be, teachers, students

5) Helen, have, son, daughter

6) Caireng, come from, Amdo, Kham

7) Zhaxi, play, piano, guitar

8) Zhoma and Huamo, live, room 5102, 5201
9) Professor Losang, teach at Fudan University, Chengdu University

10) I, study, art, history

11) Dorji, have, morning classes, afternoon classes

11. Read the conversation and answer the questions.

Tsultrim: Hey, Chomtso, how many people are in your family?
Chomtso: There are five people in my family.
Tsultrim: How many brothers do you have?
Chomtso: I have one younger brother.
Tsultrim: And how many sisters do you have?
Chomtso: I have one older sister.

A) Answer these questions.
1) How many people are there in Chomtso's family? _______________________________
2) How many brothers does Chomtso have? _____________________________________
3) How many sons does Chomtso's mother have? _________________________________
4) How many daughters does Chomtso's father have? ______________________________
5) How many sisters does Chomtso have? ______________________________________
6) How many children does Chomtso have? _____________________________________

Zhaxi: Do you know who this is?
Rinchen: No, I don't know. Who is that?
Zhaxi: This is Norbu. He is my uncle’s son. We are cousins.
Rinchen: I see. How many cousins do you have?
Zhaxi: I have three cousins. Two are boys and one is a girl.
Rinchen: What are their names?
Zhaxi: Their names are Norbu, Metok, and Caireng.
Rinchen: Hey, I think I know Metok. Is she in Grade Three, Class Two?
Zhaxi: Yes, she is.
Rinchen: We are classmates!

B) Answer these questions.
1) Who are cousins? ___________________________________________________________
2) Who is Norbu? _____________________________________________________________
3) Who are cousins? __________________________________________________________
4) How many cousins does Zhaxi have? __________________________________________
5) Who are Metok and Caireng? _______________________________________________
6) Who are classmates? ________________________________________________________
7) Who is Rinchen's classmate? _________________________________________
8) Who is Metok's classmate? _________________________________________

**Yontan:** Excuse me, I don’t know you. What are your names?
**Peter:** My name is Peter and this is Helen. We are students.
**Yontan:** Are you brother and sister?
**Helen:** No, we are not. Peter is English, and I am from Australia.
**Yontan:** Oh, my aunt lives in Australia. Her name is Somu. Do you know her?
**Helen:** No, I don’t.
**Peter:** Excuse me, what is your name?
**Yontan:** Oh, I’m sorry, my name is Yontan.
**Peter:** It’s nice to meet you.
**Yontan:** Nice to meet you, too! Welcome to our school!

C) Answer these questions.
1) Who is Peter? ___________________________________________________
2) Who is Helen? _________________________________________________
3) Who is English? ______________________________________________
4) Who is Australian? ____________________________________________
5) Where does Somu live? _________________________________________
6) Who is Yontan? ________________________________________________
7) How many aunts do you have? __________________________________
8) How many uncles do you have? _________________________________
9) How many cousins do you have? _________________________________
10) Who is your mother’s sister? ________________________________
11) Who is your father's brother? _________________________________
12) Who is your father's son? ________________________________
13) Who is your mother's daughter? _______________________________
14) Who is your son's father? ___________________________________
15) Who is your mother's sister's daughter? ________________________
16) Who is your father's brother's daughter? ______________________
17) Who is your mother's mother? _______________________________
18) Who is your father's mother? ________________________________
19) Who is your mother's brother's daughter? ______________________
20) Who is your brother's son? __________________________________
21) Who is your sister's son? ____________________________________
22) Who is your brother's daughter? ______________________________
23) Who is your sister's daughter? ________________________________
12. Fill in the blanks with the correct possessive pronoun.

用代词的所有格形式填空。

a. This is _____ classmate.  (I)          b. Welcome to _____ school!(we)
c. What are ______ names? (they)       d. Are you ______ cousin? (he)
e. Who is ______ mother?  (you)       f. Is that ______ pencil? (she)

13. Do the crossword puzzle.

做拼字游戏。

Across: 1. My brother's son is my n_____.
5. She is my father's daughter. She is my s_____.
6. He is my mother's father.
8. She is my father's father.
9. My father's brother is my u_____.
12. My mother is my father's w_____.
13. She is my father's brother's daughter.
   She is my c_____.

Down: 2. My father is my mother's h_____.
3. I am the son of my m_____.
4. He is my father's son. He is my b_____.
7. I am the son of my f_____.
10. My brother's daughter is my n_____.
11. My father's sister is my a_____.
Lesson Eight

New Words

eight /eɪt/ num. 八
class /klaːs/ n. 课程
get up 起床
classroom /ˈklɑːsroʊm/ n. 教室
go to school 去上学
every /ˈevri/ a. 每个
for /fɔr; fər/ prep. 为了
breakfast /ˈbrekfəst/ n. 早餐
home /həʊm/ n. & ad. 家

time /taɪm/ n. 时间
school /skuːl/ n. 学校

quarter /ˈkwɔːtə/ n. 一刻钟
may /meɪ/ v. 可能, 也许, 可以, 准许
past /pɑːst/ a. & n. 过去的, 超过
which /wɪtʃ/ pron. 哪一个
day /deɪ/ n. 一日, 一天, 白天
lunch /ˈlʌntʃ/ n. 午餐
then /ðen/ ad. 然后
over there 那边
behave /bɪˈheɪv/ vi. 行为

Text
Mary
gets up at six every day. She has breakfast at a quarter past six and then goes to school. She has three or four classes. Then she comes home for lunch. She has no classes in the afternoon. She studies at home.

Conversation
A. Excuse me. Are you Mr. Brown?
B. No. I’m Peter Jackson. May I help you?
A. Which is Mr. Brown’s room?
B. It’s over there.
A. Thank you.
B. You’re welcome.

A. 请问，你是布郎先生吗？
B. 不，我是彼得·杰克森。我能帮你什么吗？
A. 布郎先生的房间是哪一个？
B. 就在那边。
A. 谢谢你。
B. 不客气。

Drills
(A)
—Do you like your work?
—Yes, I do.
—Does Jack like his work?
—No, he doesn’t. He doesn’t like his work.

a) study English, Nancy.
b) have lunch at school, Paul
c) have classes in the afternoon, Sarah
d) get up at six, your younger brother

(B)
—Does Mary get up at six?
—Yes, she does.
—What time do you get up?
—I get up at five.

a) go to school in the morning, at eight o'clock
b) have breakfast at a quarter past six, at seven
c) go to school at seven, at a quarter past seven
d) come home in the morning, in the afternoon at three o'clock

Exercises
1. Read the new words several times.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:

1) What time does Mary get up? She gets up at six.
2) Does she have breakfast at home? ________________________________
3) What time does she have it? ________________________________
4) What does she do then? ________________________________
5) How many classes does she have every day? ________________________________
6) Does she have all the classes in the morning? ________________________________
7) Does she have classes in the afternoon? ________________________________
8) Does she have lunch at school or at home? ________________________________
9) Does she go to school in the afternoon? ________________________________
10) What does she do in the afternoon? ________________________________
11) Where does she study in the afternoon? ________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Turn these sentences into questions:

1) She majors in French. What does she major in?
2) Joe lives in Room 309. ________________________________
3) She is interested in English history. ________________________________
4) We get along with each other very well. ________________________________
5) Mrs. Lake teaches at Boston University. ________________________________
6) Helen helps me in my English study. ________________________________
7) Miss White goes to work at eight. ________________________________
8) This is Dr. Jackson’s room. ________________________________

6. Complete the sentences with the words given below

1) Do you have a ___? (pen, radio, clock, a map of China)
2) Does Peter have any ____? (pencils, picture-books, English books, Chinese friends)
3) I don’t have a ____. (good radio, new watch, map of England, son)
4) Nancy has no ___. (pictures, pens, French books, Japanese friends)

7. Read these sentences:

- I know English.
- You know English.
- She knows English.
- We know English.
- You know English.
- They know English.
- Do I know English?
- Do you know English?
- Do they know English?
- Do she know English?
- Do we know English?
• Does he know English?          • You don’t know English.
• Does she know English?          • He doesn’t know English.
• Do we know English?            • She doesn’t know English.
• Do you know English?            • We don’t know English.
• Do they know English?           • You don’t know English.
• I don’t know English.           • They don’t know English.

8. Learn this song: Good Morning To You. / Happy Birthday to you).

Good Morning To You
(Happy Birthday)

\[
\text{Good morning to you. Good morning to you.}
\]

\[
\text{Happy birthday to you. Happy birthday to you.}
\]

\[
\text{Good morning dear teacher. Good morning to you.}
\]

\[
\text{Happy birthday dear Dorji. Happy birthday to you.}
\]

\[
\text{M Hill}
\]
Lesson Nine
第九课

New Words

- classroom /ˈkla:sru:m/ n. 教室
- small /smɔːl/ a. 小的
- but /bət; bɔt/ conj. 但是, 可是
- clean /kliːn/ a. 干净的
- tidy /ˈtaɪdi/ a. 整洁
- desk /desk/ n. 桌子
- on /ɒn/ prep. & ad. 在…上
- chair /tʃeə/ n. 椅子
- eleven /ˈɛlevn/ num. 十一
- twelve /ˈtwɛlv/ num. 十二
- twenty /ˈtwenti/ num. 二十
- blackboard /ˈblækboʊd/ n. 黑板
- wall /wɔːl/ n. 墙
- please /pliːz/ vi. 请
- right /raɪt/ a. 正确的
- will /wɪl/ aux. 会, 要, 将, 将要, 会, 要, 将, 将要
- again /əˈgen; əˈgem/ ad. 再一次, 又, 再三地
- ten /ten/ num. 十
- thirty /ˈθɜːti/ num. 三十
- any /ˈeni/ a. & pron. 任何的, 无论哪个

Text

Our Classroom

This is our classroom. It is very small, but it is clean and tidy.
This is a desk. There is a clock and a book on it. There are four chairs in the room. And there is a blackboard on the wall. On these two walls there are some pictures and a map of China.
I like our classroom.
Conversation

A. This is Room 619, isn’t it?
B. Yes, it is. Come in, please.
A. May I see Mr. Tenzen?
B. Sorry, he isn’t in.
A. That’s all right. I’ll come again this afternoon.

A. 这是 619 号房间吗?
B. 是的, 请进
A. 我可以见旦增先生吗?
B. 对不起，他不在。
A. 没关系，我今天下午再来。

Drills

(A)

—Is there a clock on the desk?
—Yes, there is. There is a clock on the desk.
—Is there a radio on the desk?
—No, there isn’t. There isn’t a radio on the desk.

a) a book, desk, a pen
b) a blackboard, wall, a clock
c) picture book, chair, a watch
d) a map of China, wall, a map of America

(B)

—Are there any chairs in the room?
—Yes, there are.
—How many chairs are there in the room?
—There are ten chairs in the room.

a) desks, in the room, eleven
c) pictures, on the wall, twenty
b) books, on the desk, twelve
d) boys, in the class, thirty
Exercises

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) Is this a classroom? Yes, it is.
   2) Whose classroom is this? ________________________________
   3) Is the room big? ________________________________
   4) Is it clean and tidy? ________________________________
   5) Is there a desk in the room? ________________________________
   6) What’s on the desk? ________________________________
   7) Are there any chairs in the room? ________________________________
   8) How many chairs are there in the room? ________________________________
   9) Is there a blackboard in the room? ________________________________
  10) Where is it? ________________________________
  11) What do you see on the blackboard? ________________________________
  12) Are there any pictures on the wall? ________________________________
  13) What’s on this wall? ________________________________
  14) Do you like your classroom? ________________________________
4. Do the drills.
5. Turn these into tag questions. 把下列句子转换成附加疑问句。
   1) This is your book. (This is your book, isn't it?)
   2) That school is very small. ________________________________
   3) They are Nancy’s children. ________________________________
   4) You’re from Boston. ________________________________
   5) Miss Thomson lives in Room 104. ________________________________
   6) You study Japanese. ________________________________
   7) There is a clock on the wall. ________________________________
   8) There are twenty-one new words in this lesson. ________________________________
6. Read aloud:
   - one
   - two
   - three
   - four
   - five
   - six
   - seven
   - eight
   - nine
   - ten
   - eleven
   - twelve
- thirteen  
- fourteen  
- fifteen  
- sixteen  
- seventeen  
- eighteen
- nineteen
- twenty
- twenty-one
- twenty-two
- twenty-three
- twenty-four
- twenty-five
- twenty-six
- twenty-seven
- twenty-eight
- twenty-nine
- thirty

1) 2 and 7 are 9.  
2) 7 and 5 are 12.  
3) 1 and 2 and 3 and 4 are 10.  
4) 2 from 13 is 11.

7. Look and answer.

—What time is it? 
—It’s _____________.

1) It’s twelve o’clock.  
2) It’s five past twelve. (It’s twelve five).  
3) It’s five to two. (It’s one fifty-five).  
4) It’s twenty past seven. (It’s seven twenty).  
5) It’s a quarter to four. (It’s three forty-five). 
6) It’s half past four. (It’s four thirty).  
7) It’s twenty to eleven. (It’s ten forty).  
8) It’s ten to seven. (It’s six fifty).  
9) It’s twenty-five past nine. (It’s nine twenty-five).  
10) It’s a quarter past eleven. (It’s eleven fifteen).  
11) It’s ten past five. (It’s five ten).  
12) It’s twenty-five to three. (It’s two thirty-five).
8. Turn these sentences into tag questions. The first one has been done for you. 把下列句子转换为附加疑问句。

1) It's nine o'clock. It's nine o'clock, isn't it?
2) The lights are off. __________________________________________?
3) There are three boys in the front row. __________________________________________?
4) The tall boy is from Lhasa. __________________________________________?
5) Tenzin sits in the first row. __________________________________________?
6) Mary and Tom speak English. __________________________________________?
7) Losang and Zhoma come from Ganzi. __________________________________________?
8) Today isn't Friday. __________________________________________?
9) Lily walks to work. __________________________________________?
10) Jake takes the bus home at 5:00. __________________________________________?
11) Dorji doesn't speak English. __________________________________________?
12) The lights aren't on. __________________________________________?
13) Dorji and Beima don't study English on Thursdays. __________________________________________?
14) Caireng can't go to the party. __________________________________________?
15) We can ask the teacher. __________________________________________?
16) The blackboard isn't clean. __________________________________________?

9. Learn these phonetic symbols. 学习语音符号。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/æ/</th>
<th>that</th>
<th>glad</th>
<th>thank</th>
<th>man</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blackboard</td>
<td>family</td>
<td>map</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>married</td>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/e/</td>
<td>pen</td>
<td>pencil</td>
<td>well</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesson</td>
<td>friend</td>
<td>very</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eleven</td>
<td>twenty</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɪ/</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>drill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which</td>
<td>history</td>
<td>different</td>
<td>middle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>picture</td>
<td>interested</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔ/</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>what</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td>clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comrade</td>
<td>doctor</td>
<td>college</td>
<td>sorry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>along</td>
<td>Thomson</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʌ/</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>son</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>mother</td>
<td>London</td>
<td>lovely</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson Ten

第十课

New Words

hospital /ˈhɒspɪtl/ n. 医院
second /ˈsekwənd/ num. 第二
building /ˈbɪldɪŋ/ adj. 楼房
number /ˈnʌmbər/ vt. 数字
another /əˈnʌðər/ a. & pron. 另一个
unite /ˈjuːnɪt/ vi. 联合
state /steɪt/ n. 州
thanks /θæŋks/ vt. 谢谢
much /mʌtʃ/ a. & ad. 许多
smoke /sməʊk/ vi. & vt. 烟
bed /bi:d/ n. 床
anyone /ˈeniwʌn/ pron. 任何人
half /hɑːf/ a. & n. 半
know /nəʊ/ n. 知道
often /ˈɔːfn/ ‘oftn/ ad. 经常
take a seat 请坐
a cup of 一杯

Text

Mary Cooper

This is Mary. She’s from England. Her family name is Cooper. She’s nineteen.

Her father’s a doctor. His name is Henry Cooper. He works in a hospital in London. Mrs. Cooper works there, too. She’s a nurse.

Mary is now in China. She studies at Beijing University. She studies Chinese. She’s now in her second year. She lives in that building. Her room number is 204. She lives with another girl. Her name is Betty Brown. She is from the United States. She studies Chinese, too.

The two girls are good friends. They both like China. I know them very well. We often help each other.
Conversation
A. Good evening.
B. Good evening, Mr. Lake. Come in, please. Take a seat and have a cup of tea.
A. Thank you very much.
B. Do you smoke?
A. No, thanks. Your room is nice and tidy.
B. Thank you.

(A) Drills
—Which class are you in?
—I’m in Class Five.
—What’s your room number?
—It’s 406.

a) Helen, 6, 317
b) David, 2, 223
c) Tom and Jake, 11, 109
d) those two girls, 12, 540

(B) Drills
—What time do you get up?
—I get up at 5:30.
—Does Sally get up at 5:30, too?
—No, she gets up at 5.

a) have breakfast, 7, 7:20
b) go to work, 7:40, 8:15
c) come home, 5:45, 6:10
d) go to bed, 10:30, 10:50
Exercises

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer these questions:
   1) What is the text about? (It’s about a girl.)
   2) What’s her name? ____________________________________________
   3) Is Cooper her family name? _____________________________________
   4) How old is she? ________________________________________________
   5) What does her father do? ________________________________________
   6) What’s his name? ______________________________________________
   7) Where does he work? __________________________________________
   8) Does his wife work there, too? __________________________________
   9) What does she do? _____________________________________________
  10) Where is Mary? ________________________________________________
  11) Where does she study? __________________________________________
  12) What does she study? __________________________________________
  13) Is she a new student? __________________________________________
  14) Where does she live? __________________________________________
  15) What’s her room number? ______________________________________
  16) Does anyone live with her? _____________________________________
  17) Is she from England, too? ______________________________________
  18) The two girls are good friends, aren’t they? ______________________
  19) You know them both, don’t you? _________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Turn these into questions:
   1) The room is on the second floor. (Which floor is the room on?)
   2) There are thirty-two rooms in this building. ______________________
   3) She studies at Shenzhen University. ______________________________
   4) They meet every day. __________________________________________
   5) There is a watch in the small box. ________________________________
   6) Betty Brown lives with Mary. ___________________________________
7) They go to bed at half past ten. ______________________________________
8) I like the subject very much. _______________________________________ 

6. Give the plural forms of these nouns. .googleapis.com 好的，以下为这些名词的复数形式。

   a) building __________________________ k) man __________________________
   b) book _____________________________ l) child __________________________
   c) map ______________________________ m) woman ________________________
   d) wall ______________________________ n) family _________________________
   e) watch ______________________________ o) party _________________________
   f) class _______________________________ p) city ___________________________
   g) brush ______________________________ q) desk _________________________
   h) day ________________________________ r) bag ___________________________
   i) radio ______________________________ s) university ______________________
   j) sister ______________________________ t) recording ______________________

7. Write the correct verbs in the blanks.

   a) to speak She ______________.           g) to watch He ______________.
   b) to see He ______________.              h) to go She ______________.
   c) to eat It ______________.              i) to do It ______________.
   d) to study She ______________.          j) to have He ______________.
   e) to be He ______________.              k) to get She ______________.
   f) to live She ______________.           l) to ask He ______________.

8. Answer these in negative sentences. 用否定句回答下列问题。

   1) Do you have any sisters? No, I don't.
   2) Does she have any children? ______________________________
   3) Is there any tea in the cup? ______________________________
   4) Are there any Japanese students in the class? ______________________
   5) Do you see any girls in the room? _____________________________
   6) Do you have any interest in the subject? ___________________________
Lesson Eleven

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>fəst/</td>
<td>第一</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>wɔtʃ/</td>
<td>看</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>'ti:</td>
<td>电视</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third</td>
<td>ɜːd/</td>
<td>第三</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen</td>
<td>'lɪsn/</td>
<td>听</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fourth</td>
<td>fɔːθ/</td>
<td>第四</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>rɔrt/</td>
<td>写</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter</td>
<td>'lɛtə/</td>
<td>信</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>'ʃɔpɪŋ/</td>
<td>购物</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great</td>
<td>griːt/</td>
<td>伟大的, 卓越的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>'təˈmɔrəʊ/</td>
<td>明天</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifth</td>
<td>fɪfθ/</td>
<td>第五</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>plet/</td>
<td>玩, 打（篮球等）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basketball</td>
<td>'bɑːskətˈbɔːl/</td>
<td>篮球</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>ˈwʊd/</td>
<td>将, 将要, 会</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>join</td>
<td>dʒɔɪn/</td>
<td>参加, 和…做伴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sure</td>
<td>sʊə/</td>
<td>肯定的, 有把握的, 确信的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>lʌv/</td>
<td>喜爱,爱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>film</td>
<td>fɪlm/</td>
<td>电影</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>town</td>
<td>toreɪn/</td>
<td>城镇,市镇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some</td>
<td>ˈsʌm; sʌm/</td>
<td>有些, 一部分, 若干, 少量</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recorder</td>
<td>ˈrekər/</td>
<td>录音机</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ping pong</td>
<td>ˈpɪŋ pɒŋ/</td>
<td>乒乓球</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedroom</td>
<td>'bedruːm; -rum/</td>
<td>卧室</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hamburger</td>
<td>ˈhæmbɜːrɡə/</td>
<td>牛肉饼</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Text
What Are They Doing?

Here are five pictures. In the first picture, an old man is smoking. In the second one a child is watching TV. In the third one a boy is listening to the radio. In the fourth one a girl is writing a letter. What do we see in the fifth picture? A young man is playing basketball.

Conversation
A. Is Mrs. Jones in?
B. No, she’s in town. She’s doing some shopping.

A. We’re going to the Great Wall tomorrow. Would you like to join us?
B. Sure, we’d love to.

A. 琼斯太太在家吗？
B. 不在，她到城里买东西去了。
A. 我们明天要去参观长城，你们想跟我们一起去吗？
B. 当然了，我们很乐意。
Drills

(A)

— Are you having breakfast?
— Yes, I am.
— Is Tom having breakfast, too.
— No, he’s listening to the radio.
a) write a letter, Betty, read the text
b) work, the children, play
c) study, Jane, do some shopping
d) watch TV, Sarah, doing the exercises

(B)

— What are you doing?
— I’m listening to the recorder.
— What is Joe doing?
— He’s doing some reading.

a) have an English lesson, the girls, see a film
b) have tea, your father, smoke
c) look at some pictures, Mary, see the doctor
d) do my homework, the girl, play ping pong

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer these questions:
   1) How many pictures do you see? ____________________________________________
   2) Who do you see in the first picture? ________________________________________
   3) What’s the old man doing? ______________________________________________
   4) Do you see a man in the second picture? ____________________________________
   5) What’s she doing? _______________________________________________________
   6) Is there a girl in the third picture? ________________________________________
   7) What’s he doing? _______________________________________________________
   8) Who’s in the fourth picture? _____________________________________________
   9) Is she listening to the radio, too? _________________________________________
10) Who do you see in the fifth picture? ________________________________________
11) What’s he doing? _______________________________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Put the verbs in the right form. 用动词的适当形式填空。
   1) She ______ (watch) TV every evening.
   2) She ______ (watch) TV now.
   3) Mr. Brown ______ (write) a book now.
   4) He ______ (write) books for children.
   5) He ______ (not listen) to the radio very often.
   6) He ______ (listen) to the recording now.
   7) Mrs. Green ______ (not smoke) often.
   8) Mr. Green ______ (smoke) in his bedroom now.
   9) They ______ (have) English classes every day.
   10) They ______ (have) an English class in their classroom now.

6. Turn these into questions 把下列句子转换成疑问句。
   1) She's doing some shopping. What is she doing?
   2) They are living in a small city. ____________________________________________?
   3) Nancy is doing well at school. _____________________________________________?
   4) Helen is helping me. ____________________________________________________?
   5) Twelve students are taking these lessons. ____________________________________?
   6) We are studying Lesson Eleven. __________________________________________?
   7) She's going to town. ____________________________________________________?
   8) There are ten boys playing basketball. ______________________________________?
   9) They are going to Lanzhou at seven o'clock. ________________________________?
  10) Li Ping is studying Chinese history. ________________________________________?
  11) Rinchen is talking to Dorji on the phone. ________________________________?
  12) Jack is eating a hamburger. ____________________________________________?

7. Read the words below.
   • Lesson One  • Lesson Three  • Lesson Five
   • Lesson Two  • Lesson Four  • Lesson Six
8. Write two questions about each of these six sentences. The first one has been done for you.

a. Here are five pictures.

1) How many people are there in the five pictures?
2) How many pictures are there?

b. In the first picture, an old man is smoking.

1) _____________________________________________?
2) _____________________________________________?

c. In the second one a child is watching TV.

1) _____________________________________________?
2) _____________________________________________?

d. In the third one a boy is listening to the radio.

1) _____________________________________________?
2) _____________________________________________?

e. In the fourth one a girl is writing a letter.

1) _____________________________________________?
2) _____________________________________________?
f. A young man is playing basketball.

1) ____________________________________________?

2) ____________________________________________?

9. Learn these phonetic symbols:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/eɪ/</th>
<th>eight</th>
<th>day</th>
<th>state</th>
<th>again</th>
<th>radio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>take</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>great</td>
<td>may</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɪ:/</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>see</td>
<td>clean</td>
<td>please</td>
<td>seat</td>
<td>each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/æ/</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>child</td>
<td>scientist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>fine</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/əʊ/</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>old</td>
<td>both</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>soldier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>home</td>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>over</td>
<td>those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ju:/</td>
<td>new</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>student</td>
<td>united</td>
<td>university</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson Twelve

New Words

o’clock /ˈklɒk/ n. น้ําเขตตี…, ตี… น้ํา
beautiful /ˈbjuːtl/ a. น่ารัก ดี
so /səʊ/ a. ดัง ดี
friendly /ˈfrendli/ a. ดี, ดี
newspaper /ˈnjuːzpeɪpər/ n. น้ําข่าว
around /əˈraʊnd/ prep. รอบ ๆ, รอบ ๆ
explain /ɪkˈsplæn/ vt. ภูมิใจ เมื่อ
something /ˈsʌmθɪŋ/ pron. อะไร อะไร
piano /ˈpɪənəʊ/ n. น้ําเงี้ยน
chess /tʃes/ n. น้ําสม่ำะ ปริศนา
stay /seɪt/ vi. อยู่, อยู่
hotel /ˈhɔtɛl/ n. น้ําโรงแรม
draw /drɔː/ vt. & vi. (ดรี) รงรี, น้ํา
mend /mend/ v. น่ารัก ซ่อมแซม

talk /tɔːk/ vi. & vt. น่ารัก แสดง ชื่ออ้าง
walk /wɔːk/ a. กระเป๋า เล่น น้ํา
song /sɔŋ/ n. น้ํา, น้ํา

visit /ˈvɪzɪt/ vt. รองรับ น้ํา
such /sʌtʃ/ a. น้ํา, น้ํา

pictorial /ˈpɪkrəriəl/ n. & a. น้ํา, น้ํา
park /pɑːk/ n. น้ําที่น่ารัก, น้ําที่น่ารัก

picnic (have a picnic) /ˈpɪknɪk/ n. น้ําที่น่ารัก, น้ําที่น่ารัก

paint (paint a picture) /ˈpeɪnt/ n. น้ําที่น่ารัก, น้ําที่น่ารัก

movie /ˈmuːvɪ/ noun. น้ําที่น่ารัก, น้ําที่น่ารัก

mend /mend/ v. น่ารัก ซ่อมแซม

•62•
Text

In the Classroom

It’s three o’clock in the afternoon. The students are now in the classroom. Some are listening to the recording. Some are doing exercises. Others are talking with each other in English. The teacher is walking around. She is helping the students. Now she is explaining something to a girl student.

Conversation

A. Where are you staying, Mr. Patterson?
B. I’m staying at the Tibetan Hotel.
A. Is this your first visit to Tibet?
B. Yes, I’m here for the first time.
A. How do you like Lhasa?
B. Oh, very much. It’s such a beautiful city and the people are so friendly.

A. 帕特森先生,你住在哪里?
B. 我住在西藏宾馆。
A. 你是第一次到西藏旅游吗?
B. 是的,我是第一次到这儿。
A. 你觉得拉萨怎么样?
B. 哦,非常喜欢。这是一个相当美丽的城市,而且这里的人们非常友好。
Drills

(A)
—What time is it?
—It’s six o’clock.
—What’s Tom doing?
—He’s getting up.

a) 6:20, Joe, do morning exercises
b) 7:10, Mary, have breakfast
c) 8:30, the students, have a lesson
d) 10:45 David, listen to the recording

(B)
—Is Tom getting up?
—Yes, he is.
—Is Joe getting up?
—No, he isn’t. He’s doing morning exercises.

a) Joe, do morning exercises, Mary, have breakfast
b) Mary, have breakfast, these students, have a lesson
c) the students, have a lesson, David, listen to the recording
d) David, listen to the recording, Peter, read newspaper

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) What time of the day is it? It’s three o’clock in the afternoon.
   2) Where are the students?
   3) What are some of them doing?
   4) Are some of them doing exercises?
   5) What are the other students doing?
   6) Are they talking in English or in Tibetan?
   7) Is there a teacher in the classroom?
   8) What is she doing?
   9) Is she helping the students?
   10) How is she helping them?
   11) Is she talking to a boy student or a girl student?
   12) Is she talking in Tibetan or in English?

4. Do the drills.

5. Talk about the pictures:
   1) How many people do you see in the first picture? I see two boys in the first picture.
   2) What are they doing?
   3) Who are in the second picture?
   4) What are they doing?
   5) Is there a girl in the third picture?
6) What’s she doing?_______________________________________________________
7) Is there a girl in the fourth picture?_______________________________________
8) Is she singing a song?_____________________________________________________
9) What are the people in the fifth picture doing?________________________________
10) What are the people in the sixth picture doing?_______________________________
11) Is there a boy or a girl in the seventh picture?_______________________________
12) Is she working?__________________________________________________________
13) Who do you see in the eighth picture?______________________________________
14) Are they reading?________________________________________________________

6. Turn these into interrogative and negative sentences.

1) There are some pictures on the wall. Are there any pictures on the wall? There aren’t any pictures on the wall.

2) There are some colleges in the city.________________________________________

3) There is some tea in the cup.______________________________________________

4) There is something on the desk.____________________________________________

5) I have some questions.____________________________________________________

6) Mary has some song books.________________________________________________

7) I see some words on the blackboard.________________________________________

8) I see someone in the room.________________________________________________

7. Read this text.

It’s evening. Mother and the girls are in. Mary is reviewing her lessons. Jane is listening to the radio and mother is doing some mending. Father is out. He’s seeing a friend in town. Peter is with his teacher. She’s talking to him about his studies. She’s helping him.
8. What are they doing this weekend? Look at the table. Write sentences. For example: Mary is going to the park on Saturday at ten o'clock.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Mary</th>
<th>Peter</th>
<th>Joe</th>
<th>Sarah</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10:00</td>
<td>go to the park</td>
<td>11:00</td>
<td>play basketball</td>
<td>9 a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 a.m.</td>
<td>visit friends</td>
<td>9 a.m.</td>
<td>2 p.m.</td>
<td>5 p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00</td>
<td>have a picnic</td>
<td>hike</td>
<td>10 a.m.</td>
<td>10:00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 p.m.</td>
<td>paint a picture</td>
<td>2 p.m.</td>
<td>listen to music</td>
<td>7 p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 p.m.</td>
<td>go to a movie</td>
<td>8 p.m.</td>
<td>have dinner</td>
<td>7 p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 p.m.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) ________________________________
2) ________________________________
3) ________________________________
4) ________________________________
5) ________________________________
6) ________________________________
7) ________________________________
8) ________________________________
9) ________________________________
10) ________________________________

9. Make a general question and a negative sentence for each sentence given below.

1) There are some pictures on the wall. Are there any pictures on the wall?
   There aren't any pictures on the wall.

2) There are some colleges in the city. ________________________________
   ________________________________

3) There is some tea in the cup. ________________________________
   ________________________________

4) There is something on the desk. ________________________________
   ________________________________

5) I have some questions. ________________________________
   ________________________________

6) Mary has some song books. ________________________________
   ________________________________
7) I see some words on the blackboard.

8) I see someone in the room.

9) Mother is mending some shirts.

10) Father would like some milk.

10. Write questions that these sentences answer. The first one has been done for you.

a. It’s three o’clock in the afternoon.
   1) **What time is it?**
   2) It’s three o’clock in the afternoon, isn’t it?

b. The students are now in the classroom.
   1) _______________________________________________________________________
   2) _______________________________________________________________________

c. Some are listening to the recording.
   1) _______________________________________________________________________
   2) _______________________________________________________________________

d. Some are doing exercises.
   1) _______________________________________________________________________
   2) _______________________________________________________________________

e. Others are talking with each other in English.
   1) _______________________________________________________________________
   2) _______________________________________________________________________

f. The teacher is walking around.
   1) _______________________________________________________________________
   2) _______________________________________________________________________

g. She is helping the students.
   1) _______________________________________________________________________
   2) _______________________________________________________________________

h. Now she is explaining something to a girl student.
   1) _______________________________________________________________________
   2) _______________________________________________________________________
Lesson Thirteen

New Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>summer</td>
<td>/'sʌmə/ n.</td>
<td>夏天</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palace</td>
<td>/'pæləs/ n.</td>
<td>宫殿</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>park</td>
<td>/pa:k/ n.</td>
<td>公园</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree</td>
<td>/tri:/ n.</td>
<td>树</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hill</td>
<td>/hɪl/ n.</td>
<td>小山，小丘，山岗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lake</td>
<td>/leɪk/ n.</td>
<td>湖</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boat</td>
<td>/bəʊt/ v.</td>
<td>乘(划)小船，游玩</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>/'tju:zdi/ n.</td>
<td>星期二</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>/'wenzdi/ n.</td>
<td>星期三</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>/'frædi/ n.</td>
<td>星期五</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>/'sætədi/ n.</td>
<td>星期六</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>/'mændri/ n.</td>
<td>星期一</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flower</td>
<td>/'flaʊə/ n.</td>
<td>花</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>/'θɜːzdi/ -di/ n.</td>
<td>星期四</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table</td>
<td>/'teɪbl/ n.</td>
<td>桌子</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>/'sʌndər/-di/ n.</td>
<td>星期天</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>/bɪg/ n.</td>
<td>大的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>window</td>
<td>/'wɪndəʊ/ n.</td>
<td>窗户</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bookcase</td>
<td>/'bʊkˌkɛs/ n.</td>
<td>书架，书柜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>political</td>
<td>/'pəlɪtɪkl/ adj.</td>
<td>政治上的，政治有关的，政权的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good time</td>
<td>/ɡʊd taɪm/ n.</td>
<td>愉快</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dress</td>
<td>/dres/ v. &amp; n.</td>
<td>穿衣服，穿(穿衣服)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cafeteria</td>
<td>/'kæfətrɪə/ n.</td>
<td>自助餐厅(食堂)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>office</td>
<td>/'ɒfɪs/ n.</td>
<td>办公室</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>/'restrɒnt/ n.</td>
<td>餐厅，饭馆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>housework</td>
<td>/'haʊswɜːk/ n.</td>
<td>家务</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash</td>
<td>/wɒʃ/ v. &amp; n.</td>
<td>洗(衣服)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Summer Palace

This is the Summer Palace. It is a park in Beijing. It is a beautiful park. There are trees and flowers in it. There are many fine buildings in it, too. There is a hill and there is a lake.

There are a lot of people in the park now. Some are walking around. Some are boating on the lake. They are having a good time there.

Conversation

A. Do you have English classes every day?
B. No, not every day. We have English classes on Tuesday, Wednesday, Friday and Saturday.
A. What classes do you have on Monday and Thursday?
B. We have Tibetan on Monday and history on Thursday.

A. 你们每天都有英语课吗？
B. 不，不是每天都有。我们星期二、星期三、星期五和星期六有英语课。
A. 星期一和星期四你们有什么课？
B. 我们星期一有藏文课，星期四有历史课。
Drills
(A)
—Are there any maps on the wall?
—Yes, there are.
—How many maps are there on the wall?
—There are two.

a) chairs, in the room, five
b) parks, in the city, three
c) flowers, in the picture, twelve
d) boats, on the lake, eleven

(B)
—Is there a table in the room?
—Yes, there is.
—Is there a desk in the room?
—No, there isn’t.

a) radio, on the table, TV-set
b) car, in the picture, bus
c) lake, in the city, palace
d) school, here, universit

Exercises
1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) This is a picture of a park, isn’t it? ________________________________________.
   2) Which park is it? ____________________________________________.
   3) Where is it? ________________________________________________.
   4) Is it very beautiful? __________________________________________.
   5) Are there many trees and flowers in it? ____________________________.
   6) Are there many fine buildings in it? ____________________________.
   7) There is a hill in the park, isn’t there? ____________________________.
   8) There is a lake in the park, isn’t there? ____________________________.
   9) What’s its name? ________________________________________________.
  10) Are there many boats on the lake? ________________________________.
  11) What are others doing? __________________________________________.
  12) Do you often go to the parks? 4. Do the drills. ___________________________________
5. Talk about the picture:
1) Is this a classroom or a bedroom? ________________________________________.
2) Is the room big? ________________________________________________________.
3) How many windows does the room have? ____________________________________.
4) Is there a desk in the room? _______________________________________________.
5) What’s there on the desk? ________________________________________________.
6) Are there any chairs in the room? ________________________________________.
7) How many beds are there in the bedroom? ___________________________________.
8) Is there a bookcase in the room? ___________________________________________.
9) Are there many books in the bookcase? ______________________________________.
10) The room is clean and tidy, isn’t it? ________________________________________.

6. Talk about the timetable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>Wednesday</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
<th>Friday</th>
<th>Saturday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td></td>
<td>History</td>
<td>History</td>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td></td>
<td>History</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lunch time**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PT  གང་ཐོབས།</th>
<th>Political Study</th>
<th>PT</th>
<th>League Meeting གང་ཐོབས། གུང་ཁམས་ དོགས་པོ་</th>
<th>Political Study</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

•72•
1) Do you have any classes on Monday? Yes, I have three classes on Monday.
2) How many classes do you have on Monday? _________________________________
3) What classes do you have on Thursday? ________________________________
4) How many English classes do you have every week? ________________________
5) On what days do you have English classes? _______________________________
6) Do you have all your classes in the morning? _____________________________
7) What classes do you have on Wednesday afternoon? ________________________
8) What do you do on Saturday afternoon? _________________________________
9) Do you have any classes in the evening? _________________________________
10) What do you do on Sundays? ________________________________________

7. Learn these phonetic symbols:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ɑː/</td>
<td>car</td>
<td>park</td>
<td>father</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔː/</td>
<td>wall</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>daughter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɜː/</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>nurse</td>
<td>girl</td>
<td>third</td>
<td>worker</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/uː/</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>room</td>
<td>school</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Reading a schedule

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Lhatso</th>
<th>Zhoma</th>
<th>Tom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:00</td>
<td>get up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:30</td>
<td>get dressed</td>
<td>get up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00</td>
<td>get dressed</td>
<td></td>
<td>get up, get dressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>say prayers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:30</td>
<td>eat breakfast at the cafeteria</td>
<td>eat breakfast, listen to the radio</td>
<td>eat breakfast, read the newspaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00</td>
<td>go to school, study</td>
<td>go to the office, work</td>
<td>go to school, teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00</td>
<td>eat lunch at the cafeteria</td>
<td>go to a restaurant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eat lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>play basketball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00</td>
<td>cook supper</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00</td>
<td></td>
<td>play with children</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00</td>
<td>do homework</td>
<td>eat supper</td>
<td>go to a restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00</td>
<td>go to bed</td>
<td>watch TV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>go to bed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What time do they do this everyday?
Lhatso: get up, go to school, eat lunch
1) Lhatso _______________________ at ______________.
2) She ___________________________ at ____________.
3) Lhatso ___________________ at ________________.

Zhoma: get dressed, play with her children, eat supper
4) Zhoma ________________________ at______________.
5) She ______________________________ at______________.
6) Zhoma _____________________________ at______________.

Tom: get up, go to school, go to bed
7) Tom ______________________________ at______________.
8) He ______________________________ at______________.
9) He _________________________________ at______________.

Lhatso, Zhoma and Tom: eat breakfast
10) They (eat breakfast) ________________________________ at__________.

9. Read the passage and answer the questions.

Yongkyi has a big family. She has four brothers and two sisters. On Saturday she helps her mother with the housework. She helps wash the clothes. She also helps her mother put the clothes away. She makes the rooms tidy and clean. Sometimes Yongkyi doesn't know whose clothes she is washing.

1) Who has a big family? _____________________________________________________
2) Whose family is big? ____________________________________________________
3) How many brothers does Yongkyi have? _____________________________________
4) How many sisters does Yongkyi have? _______________________________________ 
5) How many children does Yongkyi's mother have? _______________________________
6) What does Yongkyi do on Saturday? _________________________________________
7) What does Yongkyi help wash? _____________________________________________
8) What does Yongkyi make neat and tidy? _______________________________________
9) What does Yongkyi sometimes not know? _____________________________________
10) What housework does Yongkyi do? ___________________________________________
11) Do you like to do housework? Why or why not? ________________________________
10. Numbers one to ten are answers. Write questions for these answers. The first one has been done for you.

一到十是答案。仿照例句给下面每个答案写出两个疑问句。

1) This is the Summer Palace.
   a. What is this?
   b. Is this the Summer Palace?

2) It is a park in Beijing.
   a ________________________________?
   b ________________________________?

3) It is a beautiful park.
   a ________________________________?
   b ________________________________?

4) There are trees and flowers in it.
   a ________________________________?
   b ________________________________?

5) There are many fine buildings in it, too.
   a ________________________________
   b ________________________________?

6) There is a hill and there is a lake.
   a ________________________________?
   b ________________________________?

7) There are a lot of people in the park now.
   a ________________________________?
   b ________________________________?

8) Some are walking around.
   a ________________________________?
   b ________________________________?

9) Some are boating on the lake.
   a ________________________________?
   b ________________________________?

10) They are having a good time there.
    a ________________________________?
    b ________________________________?
11. Write answers to these questions. The first one has been done for you.
   Do you have English classes every day?
       Yes, I have.

   What classes do you have on Monday and Thursday?
       I have English class on Monday and I have Tibetan class on Thursday.

1) Do you have any classes on Monday?

2) How many classes do you have on Monday?

3) What classes do you have on Thursday?

4) How many English classes do you have every week?

5) On what days do you have English classes?

6) Do you have all your classes in the morning?

7) What classes do you have on Wednesday afternoon?

8) What do you do on Saturday afternoon?

9) Do you have any classes in the evening?

10) What do you do on Sundays?
Lesson Fourteen

New Words

season /ˈsiːzn/ n. 季节
month /mænθ/ n. (月份) 月
spring /ˈsprɪŋ/ n. 春天
summer /ˈsʌmə/ n. 夏天
autumn /ˈɔːtəm/ n. 秋天
winter /ˈwɪntə/ n. & a. 冬天
January /dʒənjuəri/ n. 一月
February /ˈfebruəri/ n. 二月
March /mɑːtʃ/ n. 三月
April /ˈɛprɔl/ n. 四月
May /meɪ/ n. 五月
June /dʒuːn/ n. 六月
July /dʒuːˈlai/ a. 七月
August /ˈɔːɡəst/ n. 八月
September /ˈseptəmbə/ n. 九月
October /ˈɑːktəbə/ n. 十月
November /ˈnɔvəmber/ n. 十一月
December /ˈdʒərnəri/ n. 十二月
usual /ˈjuːʒuəl/ ad. 通常
leap year 闰年
campus /ˈkæmpəs/ n. 校园
closet /ˈklɒzɪt/ noun. 壁橱
anywhere /ˈeniweə/ ad. 任何地方
term (semester) /ˈtɜːm/ n. 学期

Text

Seasons and Months

There are four seasons in the year. They are spring, summer, autumn and winter.

There are twelve months in a year. They are January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, and December.

How many weeks are there in a year? There are fifty-two weeks. How many days are there in a year? There are usually three hundred and sixty-five days. In a leap year there are three hundred and sixty-six days.
Conversation

A. What day is today?
B. It's Sunday.
A. Where are the students?
B. Some of them are in town. They're doing some shopping. The others are in the Summer Palace. They are boating on Kunming Lake.

Drills

(A)
—Where is Mary?
—She’s in town.
—What’s she doing there?
—She’s seeing a film.

a) John, classroom, do his homework
b) the children, bedroom, watch TV
c) the Smiths, town, visit some friends
d) Nancy, the park, take some pictures

(B)
—Where are you going?
—I’m going to town.
—What are you going to do there?
—I’m going to do some shopping.

a) Building No. 3, see an English film
b) town, get some books
c) the bedroom, get my recorder
d) the hospital, see the doctor

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) How many seasons are there in a year? There are four seasons in a year.
   2) What are they? ___________________________________________________________
   3) Which are the spring months? ______________________________________________
   4) Is spring a lovely season? ________________________________________________
   5) Which are the summer months? _____________________________________________
   6) Do you like summer? Why? _______________________________________________
   7) What months are in autumn? ______________________________________________
   8) Autumn is a lovely season, too, isn’t it? _____________________________________
   9) Which are the winter months? _____________________________________________
 10) How many months are there in a year? _______________________________________
 11) How many days are there in a month? ________________________________________
 12) How many days are there in February? ______________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Answer the question with the given words. 用给出日期回答问题。

What’s the date (today)? (It’s ________.)
1) May 1st  2) July 2nd  3) April 4th
4) January 12th  5) March 8th  6) August 3rd
7) November 21st  8) June 22nd  9) February 23rd
10) September 20th  11) December 31st  12) November 30th

6. Talk about the picture:
1) How many people do you see in the picture? ________________________________

2) Are they a family? _____________________________________________________

3) This man is the father, isn’t he? _________________________________________

4) What is he doing? ______________________________________________________

5) Who’s the woman? _____________________________________________________

6) What’s she doing? _____________________________________________________

7) What’s the girl doing? _________________________________________________

8) What about the boy? __________________________________________________

9) Is there a clock in the room? __________________________________________

10) There is a radio in the room, too, isn’t there? ____________________________

11) Is there a desk in the room? __________________________________________

7. What’s the date

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sun</th>
<th>Mon</th>
<th>Tue</th>
<th>Wed</th>
<th>Thu</th>
<th>Fri</th>
<th>Sat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) …on the first Saturday in April? (It’s April second.)

2) …on the fifth Friday in April? ________________________________________

3) …on the second Monday in April? ______________________________________

4) …on the third Tuesday in April? ______________________________________

5) …on last Saturday in April? _________________________________________

6) …on the fourth Wednesday in April? _________________________________

7) …on the third Friday in April? ______________________________________

8) …on the third Thursday in April? _________________________________

8. Put the verbs in the right form.

1) John ______ (take) a picture of us.

2) John often______ (take) pictures.

3) Usually the girl ______ (not study) at a girl’s school.

4) Helen ______ (study) at a girls’ school now.
5) The Thomsons usually ______ (have) lunch at twelve.
6) The Thomsons ______ (have) lunch now.
7) The teacher ______ (take) a walk in the park now.
8) He often ______ (take) a walk after supper. (晚饭) 
9) The boy ______ (get) up now.
10) He ______ (get) up at 5:30 every day.

9. Can you spell the month? 你能拼出这些月份吗？
1) uugstA______________ 7) nrauJya______________
2) uaebyrrF______________ 8) perbtemeS______________
3) arMch______________ 9) bNoeevmr______________
4) rbOtteo______________ 10) irApl______________
5) erceDbme______________ 11) enJu______________
6) yJlu______________ 12) yMa______________

10. Put the verbs in the right form.
   Sangizhoma is a student at Kangding Teacher's College. She lives on campus and
   ___________________ (study) Tibetan, Chinese and English. This term, she ___________________(not study) computers. She ___________________ (come from) Aba. Sangizhoma
   ___________________ (get up) every day at 6:30. Now it is 7:00, and she ___________________ (have) breakfast. She ___________________ (have) four classes in the morning. She ___________________ (not have) classes in the afternoon. This afternoon she ___________________ (go) to Guza with her
   friends. Usually she ___________________ (speak) English with the teacher in the classroom, but this
   morning she ___________________ (listen) to the recording, because her teacher is sick.

11. Write questions that these sentences answer. The first one has been done for you. 仿照例句给下列答案写出疑问句。
1) There are four seasons in a year.
   ______________________________________________________________________
   ______________________________________________________________________
2) There are twelve months in a year.
   ______________________________________________________________________
   ______________________________________________________________________
3) There are fifty-two weeks in a year.
_____________________________________________________?
_____________________________________________________?

4) There are usually three hundred and sixty-five days in a year.
_____________________________________________________?
_____________________________________________________?

5) In a leap year there are three hundred and sixty-six days
_____________________________________________________?
_____________________________________________________?

12. Read the passage and answer the questions.


1) Who can't find his book?______________________________________________________

2) What can Yontan not find?_____________________________________________________

3) Where does he look for his book?_______________________________________________

4) Who does Yontan ask about his book?___________________________________________

5) Does Yontan find his book?____________________________________________________

6) Where is Yontan's book?_______________________________________________________

7) What does Yontan think?_______________________________________________________

8) Who is Yongkyi?_____________________________________________________________

9) What does Yontan's brother tell Yontan?_________________________________________

10) What does Yongkyi tell Yontan?_______________________________________________

11) What is Yontan's sister's name?______________________________________________
Lesson Fifteen (A)

New Words

Canada /'kænədə/ n. 加拿大

think /θɪŋk/ v. 想，思考，认为

want /wɒnt/ vt. 想要，要，希望

interesting /ɪnˈtræstɪŋ/ adj. 有趣的

place /pleɪs/ n. 地方，地点

plan /plæn/ n. 计划，打算

south /sauθ/ 南方

fly /flaɪ/ v. 乘飞机

next /nekst/ adj. (前)面的，下一个的

several /ˈsevrəl/ a. & n. 几个

mine /maɪn/ pron. 我的

give /ɡɪv/ v. 给，送给

talk /tɔːlk/ n. 演说，讲话

would like 想要，肯

hear /hɪə/ vt. 听到，听见

when /wɛn/ conj. …的时候，

start /staːt/ vt. & vi. 开始

tonight /taˈnaɪt/ n. 今晚

train /træn/ n. 火车

end /ɛnd/ n. 尽头，终点，最后，最终

else /els/ adj. 其他

Text

Mr. Patterson

Mr. Patterson is from Canada. He is now visiting China. He is staying at the Tibetan Hotel. He likes Lhasa. He thinks it is a beautiful city and the people are friendly. He wants to visit all the interesting places in Lhasa.

He plans to go to the south, too. He’s flying to Shanghai next week. He is going to visit several big cities in the south and then take a train to Hong Kong.

Conversation

A. A friend of mine is going to give a talk tomorrow. Would you like to come and hear it?
B. Yes, I’d love to. What’s your friend going to talk about?
A. The history of the United States.
B. That’s interesting. When is it going to start?
A. At two-thirty in the afternoon.
Drills

(A)

—Are you going to watch TV tonight?
—Yes, I am.
—What about Peter? Is he going to watch TV, too?
—No, he isn’t. He’s going to see a film.

da) do some shopping tomorrow, Nancy, do some reading
b) listen to the recording this afternoon, Tom, write a letter
c) hear the English talk, Jane, draw some pictures
d) go there by bus, the children, go by train

(B)

—Where are they going?
—They’re going to town.
—What are they going to do there?
—They’re going to see a friend of theirs.

a) Betty, the park, take a walk
b) Joe, the classroom, help his students
c) Sarah, the bedroom, do some reading
d) Mr. Brown, Beijing University, give a talk

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) What’s the text about? It’s about Mr. Patterson.
   2) Where is he from? ______________________________
   3) Where is he now? ______________________________
   4) Where is he staying? ______________________________
   5) Does he like Lhasa? ______________________________
   6) What does he think of the city? __________________
   7) What does he want to do? ________________________
   8) Where else does he plan to go? __________________
   9) What’s he going to do next week? ________________
  10) Which places is he going to visit? ________________
  11) What’s he going to do after that?

4. Turn these sentences into questions. The first one has been done for you.
   1) We are going to see them on Saturday. What are we going to do on Saturday?
2) They're going to take him to the hospital._____________________________________?
3) Mary is going to come by train._____________________________________________
4) My sister is going to do it for me.__________________________________________
5) They're going to take Room 305.__________________________________________
6) They're going to build twenty houses here._________________________________
7) We're going to visit London next year.______________________________________

5. Study the groups of sentences. 阅读下列句子。

a) Tom watches TV every evening.
b) Tom is watching TV now.
c) Tom is going to watch TV tonight.

a) I read the newspapers every day.
b) I’m reading newspapers now.
c) I’m going to read the newspapers this afternoon.

a) She usually gets up at five.
b) She is getting up now.
c) She’s going to get up at five tomorrow.

a) He has lunch at home.
b) He’s having lunch now.
c) He’s going to have lunch at school on Thursday.

6. Write questions that these sentences answer. The first one has been done for you. 仿照例子给下列句子写问题。

Mr. Patterson is from Canada. Where is Mr. Patterson from? Is Mr. Patterson from Canada?

1) He is now visiting China.__________________________________________________?
_____________________________________________________________________
2) He is staying at the Tibetan Hotel__________________________________________?
_____________________________________________________________________
3) He likes Lhasa.__________________________________________________________?
_____________________________________________________________________
4) He thinks it is a beautiful city and the people are friendly.______________________?
_____________________________________________________________________
5) He wants to visit all the interesting places in Lhasa.___________________________?
_____________________________________________________________________

•85•
6) He plans to go to the south, too.________________________________________
____________________________________________________________________?

7) He’s flying to Shanghai next week. ________________________________
____________________________________________________________________?

8) He is going to visit several big cities in the south and then take a train to Hong kong.
___________________________________________________________________?

7. Fill in the blanks with the correct verb.
   1) Tom ________ (watch) TV every evening.
   2) Tom is ________ (watch) TV every evening.
   3) Tom did ________ (watch) TV every evening.
   4) Tom will ________ (watch) TV every evening.
   5) Tom is going to ________ (watch) TV every evening.
   6) I ______ (read) the newspapers every day.
   7) I am ______ (read) the newspapers every day.
   8) I did ______ (read) the newspapers every day.
   9) I am going to ______ (read) the newspapers every day.
   10) She usually ______ (get) up at five.
    11) She is ______ (get) up at five.
    12) She is going to ______ (get) up at five.
    13) She did ______ (get) up at five.
Lesson Fifteen (B)

A king named Tiger Lion has a lot of money, gold, and servants. His right leg is twisted and his left eye is blind.

One morning when he is out hunting, he sees an artist painting by a river. The King sees that the picture he is painting is very nice. He asks the artist to paint a picture of him and the artist agrees.

The finished painting shows the King without a twisted leg and his left eye is not blind. The King looks at the painting, becomes very angry and kills the artist. He calls for another artist. This painter is very famous. He paints the King as he really is with a twisted leg and a blind left eye. When the King sees this painting, he again becomes angry and killed the painter.

The next day he calls for another artist named Dorji. He is not a famous painter but he is very clever. In his painting, the King is very handsome, his right leg is up on a rock bracing a gun, and his left eye is closed as though he is shooting a tiger.

The King is very pleased with this painting and gives the painter a lot of money and gold.

Exercises

1. Answer the following questions.
   a) How many artists paint the King?

   b) Why does the King kill the first artist?

   c) Why does the King kill the second artist?

   d) Do you think Dorji is clever? Why?

   e) If you are the artist, how will you paint the King? Why?
Lesson Sixteen

New words

dear /də/ a. & n. 亲爱的

friendship /'frendʃip/ n. 友情，友谊，朋友关系

sight /sait/ n. 情景，景象

museum /'mju:ziəm/ n. 博物馆

till /til/ vt. 直到，至

end /end/ noun. 最后，最终，终点

leave (for) …. /li:v/ v. 前往到…，到…去

home /həʊm/ n. & ad. 家，家乡

miss /mɪs/ vt. 怀念，想

try /trai/ vt. 试，试图

call up /kɔ:lʌp/ 打电话给，给…打电话

telephone /'telfəʊn/ n. 电话

extension /'ekstenʃən/ n. 分机

trip /trɪp/ n. 旅行

long /lɒŋ/ a. 长的

away /ə'wei/ ad. 在远处，离去，到远处

northeast /'nɔ:əθi:st/ n. 东北

shop /ʃɒp/ n. 商店

envelope /'envəloʊp/ 'en-/ 信封

sure /ʃʊə/ a. 肯定，肯定

medicine /'medsn/ n. 药

yak /jæk/ n. 牦牛

U.S.A. (United States of America) 美国

kite /kait/ n. 风筝

lift (lift a box) /lɪft/ n. 举起，提出，提起

meat /mi:t/ n. 肉

zip code (postal code) 邮政编码

U.S.A. (United States of America)
May 20, 1990

Dear Sarah,

This is my third day in Lhasa. I'm staying at the Yak Hotel. My room number is 4230, in Building 4.

We're seeing the sights of Lhasa. Tomorrow we're going to visit the Potala Palace and the Norbu Park Museum. We plan to stay till the end of the month. We may leave for Xi'an on June 1st.

How are things at home? I miss you all. Try to call me next week. My telephone number is 89-0891, Extension 3577.

Love,

Peter Davis

Conversation

A. I’m going on a trip next week.
B. How long will you be away?
   A. About a week
   B. Where are you going?
   A. To Lhasa.
   
   A. ཞེས་བར་གཟིགས་པའི་དར་རང་བུ་ཐ་དྲུག་པོ་སློབ་སྦྱོར།
   B. བུད་དུས་དཔོན་ལྷག་གི་ཐུག་པོ་སློབ་སྦྱོར།
   A. མ་རེ་དགོན་ལུང་བུ་སྦྱོར།
   B. ས་རྒྱས་ལུང་བུ་སྦྱོར།
   A. ས་རྒྱས་ལུང་བུ་སྦྱོར།

A. 我下周要去旅行。
B. 你要去多久？
A. 大约一周。
B. 要去哪儿？
A. 去拉萨。
Drills
(A)
—Where are you going?
—I’m going to the shop.
—Will you get some envelopes for me?
—Sure.

a) the book store, an English-Tibetan Dictionary  
b) town, flowers  
c) the university, books  
d) the hospital, medicine

(B)
—What are you going to do on Sunday?
—I’m going to visit a museum.
—Is Sally going to visit the museum, too?
—No, she isn’t. She’s going to see a friend of hers.

a) tomorrow, write some letters, do some reading  
b) tonight, see a film, watch TV  
c) tomorrow afternoon, play basketball, take her piano lesson  
d) day after tomorrow, see the doctor, see her mother

Exercises
1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) Where is Peter Davis? (He’s in Lhasa.)  
   2) Who is he writing to?  
   3) Where is Peter staying?  
   4) What’s his room number?  
   5) Which building is his room in?  
   6) What’s Peter doing in Lhasa?  
   7) Which places is he going to visit the next day?  
   8) How long does he plan to stay?  
   9) When is he going to leave Lhasa?  
  10) Where is he leaving for?  
  11) Does Peter miss his family?  
  12) What does he want Sarah to do?  
  13) What’s his telephone number?
4. Do the drills.
5. Read these:
(A)
   Building 5   Room 3201   Page 78   Bus No. 20   Lesson 32   Hospital No. 7
(B)
   65—2203   89—0736   44—0736   28—3761   417—8255   209—3976
6. Answer these questions.
   1) What are you doing now? I’m studying English.
   2) Do you study English every day? ________________________________
   3) How long do you study every day? ________________________________
4) Which lesson are you studying? _____________________________________
5) What’s the name of the text? _______________________________________
6) Are there many new words in it? ____________________________________
7) Do you like this text? Why? ________________________________________
8) Are you going to do the exercises? ___________________________________
9) Are you going to listen to the recording? _______________________________
10) When are you going to listen to it? ___________________________________
11) What are you going to do on Sunday? _________________________________

7. Learn to address a letter. 怎样用英语写地址。
   Mrs. Sarah Davis
   490 East Moltke
   Daly City, CA 94014
   U.S.A.

8. Find these words in your dictionary and write the Tibetan equivalent. 在词典里查阅下面这些词，写出它们的藏语意思。

   building __________  suite __________
   room __________    company __________
   number __________ department __________
   apartment __________
   street __________
   road __________
   page __________
   suite __________
   company __________
   department __________
   professor __________
   mister __________
   The United Kingdom _______

9. Read the passage and answer the questions. 阅读短文回答问题。
   One day after school Yontan asks his friends to come to his house to play. Yontan and
   his friends like to fly kites, sing songs, and ride bicycles. Some of his friends don’t have
   a bicycle so they listen to the radio. Others cook food. Yongkyi likes to help Yontan’s
   sister with the housework. After they clean the house they like to sing songs together.

   1) Who asks his friends to come to his house to play? __________________________
   2) What does Yontan ask his friends? __________________________
   3) What do Yontan and his friends like to do? __________________________
   4) Who don’t have a bicycle? __________________________
   5) What does Yongkyi like to do? __________________________
   6) When do they like to sing songs together? __________________________
   7) Where does Yontan ask his friends to come? __________________________
   8) What do Yontan and his friends like to fly? __________________________
9) What do Yontan and his friends like to ride? __________________________________________

10) Who listen to the radio? _______________________________________________________

10. Practice this conversation with your partner.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Can you help her lift this box?</td>
<td>Yes, I can help ______.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Can Rinchen help his sister wash the clothes?</td>
<td>Yes, Rinchen can help ______ sister wash the clothes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Can you take this book to your father?</td>
<td>Yes, I can take this book to ______.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Can you buy your uncle some meat?</td>
<td>Yes, I can buy ______ some meat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. Can you talk to the children?</td>
<td>Yes, I can talk to ______.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. Can you help me do my homework?</td>
<td>Yes, ___ can help ______ do ______ homework.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11. Read the following descriptions. Write an envelope for each.

A. Send a letter to the American, Peter Brown. He lives at 2309 South Main Street in Mineola, New York. His zip code is 11005

B. Write an envelope to Helen Green. She lives at Holly Springs Garden, Apartment B-172. She lives in Dallas, Texas, zip code 68243

C. Address an envelope to Bubble Springs Water Company. Their offices are in the Fountain Building, Suite 10M, Melbourne. That is in Victoria, Australia, postal code 2SN 6TB
Lesson Seventeen

New Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>pla:n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>stɒp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a couple of</td>
<td>ə kʌpl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td>rɛst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>during</td>
<td>/ˈdʒʊərɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>/ˈhɒlədɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>probably</td>
<td>/ˈprɔbəbli/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>/swɪm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also</td>
<td>/ˈɔːlsəʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>review</td>
<td>/rɪˈvjuː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td>/həʊp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novel</td>
<td>/ˈnɔvəl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get back</td>
<td>ɡɛt bæk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around</td>
<td>/əˈraʊnd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>way</td>
<td>/weɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomb</td>
<td>/tuːm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>picnic</td>
<td>/ˈpɪknɪk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall</td>
<td>/ʃɔl; fəl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poem</td>
<td>/ˈpəʊm/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

My Plan for the Summer

This summer I’m going home. I’ll take a train to Nanjing. There I will stop for a couple of days. I have many friends there, you know. Then I will go home by bus.

I will have a good rest during the holidays. I will probably go swimming every day. I will also review my lessons and do some reading. I hope to read a few novels.

I will stay at home for about a month. I will try to get back to Beijing around August 20th.

Conversation

A. What’s our plan for today?
B. We’re going to visit the Great Wall.
A. That’s marvelous. When shall we start off?
B. At half past eight.
A. Shall we be back for lunch?
B. No, on our way back, we’ll stop at the Ming Tombs. We’ll have a picnic there.
Drills

(A)

—Will you join us on the trip?
—Yes, I will.

—Will Jennie join us?
—No, she won’t, she’ll stay at home
a) be back today, Betty, be back tomorrow
b) go to the talk, Tom, go to hospital
c) go and see the film, Ruth, go swimming
d) be here tonight, Joe, go to town

(B)

—Shall we go by train?
—Yes, we shall. We shall go by train.

—Will the girls go by train?
—No, they won’t. They’ll go by boat.

a) have PT classes today, the boys, on Thursday
b) walk to the park, the children, go by bus
c) have lunch at school, the teachers, have lunch at home
d) take a walk in the park, the young people, go boating on the lake

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer these questions:
   1) Are you going home this summer? Yes, I am.
2) How are you going home? ___________________________________________________
3) Which city are you going to first? _____________________________________________
4) Do you plan to stop at Nanjing for some time? _________________________________
5) How long do you plan to stay there? __________________________________________
6) Why do you want to stay there? _____________________________________________
7) What will you do after that? ________________________________________________
8) Will you go home by train or by bus from Nanjing? _____________________________
9) What do you plan to do at home? _____________________________________________
10) Are you going to review your lessons during the holidays? _______________________
11) What else do you plan to do? ______________________________________________
12) How long are you going to stay at home? _____________________________________
13) When will you be back from home? __________________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Answer these questions:
   1) What time will you get up tomorrow? I’ll get up at 5:30 tomorrow.
   2) Will you have breakfast at home? __________________________________________
   3) What will you do after breakfast? __________________________________________
   4) How are you going to school? _____________________________________________
   5) When will your first class start? ___________________________________________
   6) How long are you going to have classes? _____________________________________
   7) Will you come home for lunch? ___________________________________________
   8) What time will you come home? ___________________________________________
   9) What will you do tomorrow evening? ________________________________________
  10) You’ll have a good rest in the evening, won’t you? ____________________________
  11) What time will you go to bed? _____________________________________________

6. Turn these into tag questions:
   1) You often have picnics. (You often have picnics, don’t you?)
   2) Rose goes swimming every day. ___________________________________________
   3) Sarah is playing the piano. _______________________________________________
   4) The boys are boating on the lake. ___________________________________________
   5) Nora is going to write a novel next year. _____________________________________
   6) You’ll write to them about it. _____________________________________________
   7) We shall stop there for a day or two. _______________________________________
9) There is some good news in today's newspaper.

10) There are a lot of colleges in the city.

7. Read the passage and answer the questions.

Rinchen is sitting with his friends. They are talking about this weekend. One friend says he wants to go swimming. Another friend says he likes listening to the radio. Rinchen doesn’t know what he wants to do. His friend asks Rinchen, “Don’t you have anything interesting to do this weekend?”

Rinchen answers, “I can’t think of anything to do.”

“How about riding a bicycle, singing a song, drawing a picture, writing a poem, making some food, talking to friends, climbing a mountain or going to the store?” one friend asks.

Rinchen doesn’t answer. He is still thinking about what he wants to do.

1) Who is sitting with his friends? ________________________________

2) Who is Rinchen sitting with? ________________________________

3) What are Rinchen and his friends talking about? ________________________________

4) Who are talking about the weekend? ________________________________

5) Who wants to go swimming? ________________________________

6) Who likes listening to the radio? ________________________________

7) What does Rinchen want to do? ________________________________

8) What does Rinchen not know? ________________________________

9) Why does Rinchen not answer his friend's question? ________________________________

10) What did you do this weekend? ________________________________

11) What do you like to do? ________________________________

8. Learn the phonetic symbols:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/θs/</th>
<th>child</th>
<th>chair</th>
<th>China</th>
<th>teacher</th>
<th>picture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/dз/</td>
<td>join</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>college</td>
<td>soldier</td>
<td>engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/θ/</td>
<td>thank</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>third</td>
<td>fifth</td>
<td>something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ð/</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>there</td>
<td>father</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʃ/</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>shall</td>
<td>sure</td>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʒ/</td>
<td>usually</td>
<td>pleasure</td>
<td>measure</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>decision</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson Eighteen

New words

announcement /ə’nəʊnmənt/ n. 公告，宣告
attention /ə’tenʃən/ n. 注意力
movement /mu:vmənt/ n. 运动
hall /hɔ:l/ n. 大厅，会堂
can /k@n; kæn/ v. 能，可以
raise /reIz/ v. 提出(问题)
question /’kwestʃən/ n. 问题
need /ni:d/ n. 需要
tube /tju:b/ n. 管子，筒
altogether /’ɔ:ltə’geθə/ 全然，总共
answer /’ɑ:nsə/ vt. 回答
translate /trænz’leit/ vt. 翻译
sentence /’sentəns/ n. 句子
clean /kli:n/ vt. 使干净
copy /’kəpi/ v. 复印，复制，拷贝
tell /tel/ vt. 说，告诉
fruit /fru:t/ n. 水果，果类
start /stɑ:t/ vt. & vi. 开始
activity /’æktIvəti/ n. 活动，行动
dental /’tənts/ 牙刷
toothpaste /’tu:θpæst/ n. 牙膏
kind /k@nd/ n. 种类

Text

An Announcement

Attention, please. An American friend will come and visit our university on Wednesday afternoon. He’ll give a talk about the workers’ movement in the United States. Will you please be at the hall at two o’clock. After the talk we can raise questions. There will be a film about workers’ life in the States at a quarter to four.

Conversation

A. May I help you?
B. I want some envelopes. And I need a toothbrush and some toothpaste.
A. Which kind would you like to have?
B. I’ll take one of these. Is this kind of toothpaste good?
A. I think so. Many people are using it.
B. All right. I’ll take a tube. How much is it all together?
A. One yuan and ninety-two fen.
B. Here you are. Thank you.
A. You’re welcome.

---

A. 你需要什么？
B. 我想要一些信封，还有一把牙刷和一管牙膏。
A. 你想要哪一种？
B. 我想要这个。这种牙膏好用吗？
A. 我觉得好用。很多人都用这种。
B. 那好，我要买一管。这些总共多少钱？
A. 一元九角两分。
B. 给你，谢谢。
A. 不客气。

Drills

(A)
—Can you answer this question?
—No, I can’t. I can’t answer this question.
—Who can answer this question?
—Henry can.

a) translate it into English, Nancy
b) explain this sentence, our teacher.
c) swim, my brother
d) sing this song, Miss Green

(B)
—Shall I (we) clean the windows?
—Yes, please do.
—Shall I (we) clean the desks and chairs?
—No, you needn’t.

a) write the new words down, copy the text
b) tell the teacher about it, tell the students about it
c) do Exercise 4, do Exercise 7
d) get some fruit, get some flowers

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the conversation several times.

3. Answer these questions:
   1) Who is coming to our university? An American friend is.
   2) When is he coming? _____________________________________________
   3) What’s he going to do here? _______________________________________
   4) What is he going to talk about? _____________________________________
   5) Where is he going to give the talk? _________________________________
   6) What time will the talk start? _________________________________
   7) What will he do after the talk? _________________________________
   8) What other activity shall we have after the talk? _______________________
   9) What’s the film about? _________________________________________
  10) What time is it going to start? _________________________________
  11) May I (we) go to the talk? _______________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Turn these into interrogative and negative sentences:
   1) Rosemary can play the piano. Can Rosemary play the piano? Rosemary can’t play the piano.
   2) I can play Tibetan chess. _______________________________________
   3) They will go swimming this afternoon. ______________________________
   4) We shall (will) have PT classes tomorrow. __________________________
   5) There will be some activities tonight. ______________________________
   6) I have something to do this evening. ______________________________

6. Answer these questions:
   1) Can you hear me? Yes, I can.
   2) Can you translate the text into Tibetan?
3 ) Can you read the new words?___________________________________________

4 ) Can you spell all the new words?_______________________________________

5 ) Can you sing a Tibetan song for us?_____________________________________

6 ) Can you sing any English songs?_______________________________________

7 ) May I use your pen?__________________________________________________

8 ) May I take this recorder home?________________________________________

9 ) May I have a look at your picture-books?________________________________

10 ) May I go home now?__________________________________________________

7. Give the plural forms of the following nouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bus</th>
<th>class</th>
<th>factory</th>
<th>university</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
<td>family</td>
<td>day</td>
<td>place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radio</td>
<td>month</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>toothbrush</td>
<td>watch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson Nineteen

New Words

Japan /dʒə'pæn/ n. นักะ ประเทศ

of course พลกVERAGE ไม่ невоз

elegant /'eɡzəliənt/ adj. ดีที่สุด ยอด

excellent /'eksaｌənt/ adj. ดีที่สุด ยอด

speak /spiːk/ vi. ชัดๆ คุย

foreign /fɔrən/ a. ต่างประเทศ

language /ˈlæŋwidʒ/ n. ภาษา

Spanish /spæniʃ/ adj. & n. ภาษาสเปน

only /ˈoʊnli/ a. เท่านั้น

fair /feə/ adj. นิยม

Sweden /ˈswiːdn/ n. สวีเดน

understand /ˌændərˈstænd/ vt. ทำความเข้าใจ

a little พลกVERAGE พอ

shut /ʃat/ vt. ปิด

door /dɔː/ n. ประตู

must /mʌst/ n. ดู

put /pʊt/ vt. เท

clothes /ˈkləʊdz/ n. เสื้อผ้า

wardrobe /ˈwɔːdrəʊb/ n. ตู้เสื้อผ้า

make /meik/ vt. ทำ

sweep /swiːp/ v. ล้าง

all right พอ

dormitory /ˈdɔːmətrɪ/ n. หอพัก

Text

Toshio and Anna

Toshio is from Japan. Of course, his Japanese is excellent. He speaks several foreign languages. His English is excellent. He can read and write it well, too. His Spanish is good, but his German is only fair. He can read, but he can’t speak it.

Anna is from Sweden. She speaks several foreign languages, too. Her English is excellent. Her Spanish is good, but her Japanese is only fair. She can understand and speak it a little. She can read and write it, but not very well.

Conversation

A. Come in, Betty. Shut the door, please. Your room isn’t very tidy.
B. What must I do, Mother?
A. Put the clothes in the wardrobe and make the bed. Then sweep the floor.
B. All right, I will.
A. 进来贝蒂，请把门关了，你的房间不是很整齐。
   B. 我该做什么，妈妈？
A. 把衣服放到衣柜里，把床整理好，然后把地扫一下。
B. 好的，我会的。

Drills
(A)
—Can’t you sing this song?  
   —No, I can’t.  
—Can anybody sing this song?  
   —Nobody can.

   a) answer this question  
   b) speak Japanese  
   c) translate it into German  
   d) understand this sentence

(B)
—Must we leave today?  
   —Yes, we must.  
—Must the children leave today, too?  
   —No, they needn’t. They may leave tomorrow.

   a) I, go with them, Sally, stay at home  
   b) we, write to her this week, Billy, write to her later  
   c) we, call him up today, we call Mary up, later  
   d) we, have lunch at school, the teachers, have it at home

Exercises
1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) Who is the text about? The text is about Toshio and Anna.
   2) Where (Which country) is Toshio from? _______________________________
   3) Is his Japanese good? _____________________________________________
   4) Does he know many other languages? ________________________________
   5) Does he know English? ___________________________________________
6) Can he read and write English? ______________________________________
7) Does he know Spanish? ______________________________________________
8) What other language does he know? ____________________________________
9) Does he know it well? ________________________________________________
10) Can he read and speak it? _____________________________________________
11) Where is Anna from? ________________________________________________
12) Does she speak several languages too? ___________________________________
13) Which language does she know well? _________________________________
14) Does she know Spanish? _____________________________________________
15) What other language does she know? __________________________________
16) Can she understand and speak it? _______________________________________
17) Can she read and write it? _____________________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Turn these into the negative.

   (A)
   1) Shut the window. (Don’t shut the window.)
   2) Write everything down. _________________________________________
   3) Put the radio on the desk. _________________________________________
   4) Tell him about it. _______________________________________________

   (B)
   1) You must speak Japanese in class. (You mustn’t speak Japanese in class.)
   2) You must write the words here. _________________________________
   3) You must sweep the floor. _______________________________________
   4) We must answer all the questions. _________________________________

   (C)
   1) Jane may know something about it. (Jane may not know anything about it.)
   2) We may go there this summer. ____________________________________
   3) She may like the plan. __________________________________________
   4) He may want to join us. _________________________________________

6. Put the verbs in brackets in the right form.

   1) She _______ (watch) TV every evening.
   2) Mary _______ (go) to bed at 10:30.
   3) The little boy _______ (brush) his teeth every morning.
4) My sister _______ (study) both English and Japanese.
5) Mary _______ (do) morning exercises every day.
6) Mrs. Robinson _______ (teach) history in a middle school.
7) Mr. Green _______ (fly) to China several times a year.
8) The little girl _______ (miss) her mother.
9) Nancy _______ (copy) every text.
10) Helen _______ (play) the piano very well.

7. Learn the phonetic symbols:

| /g/ | go   | good  | give  | got   | girl | glad  |
| /h/ | he   | her   | hope  | who   | help | hello |
| /j/ | yes  | you   | year  | few   | united| newspaper |
| /g/ | sing | song  | young | English | language |
| /r/ | read | write | room  | raise | America | different |
| /z/ | his  | is    | these | those | Chinese | Japanese |

8. Read the passage and answer the questions.

This is the first day of class in the new term. The teacher's name is Mr. Smith. He is from America. The students are Tibetan. There are twenty students in Mr. Smith's class. There are sixteen girls and four boys. Every day the class begins at two o'clock. The class ends at four o'clock. Many students come to school by bus. Some students come to school from their dormitory on foot.

1) What day is it? _______________________________.
2) Who is the teacher? _______________________________.
3) Who is Mr. Smith? _______________________________.
4) Where is Mr. Smith from? _______________________________.
5) Who is from America? _______________________________.
6) Who are Tibetan? _______________________________.
7) How many students are there in Mr. Smith's class? _______________________________.
8) How many students does Mr. Smith have? _______________________________.
9) How many boys are there in the class? _______________________________.
10) How many girls are there in the class? _______________________________.
11) What time does the class begin? _______________________________.
12) What time does the class end? _______________________________.
13) How do many students come to school? _______________________________.
14) How do you go home? _______________________________.
Lesson Twenty (A)

New words

flight attendant /flaɪt əˈtændənt/ n. 空中小姐
important /ɪmˈpɔːtnt/ a. 重要的,主要的
airline /ˈeəlайн/ n. 航线
travel /ˈtrævl/ vi. 旅游,旅行
Europe /juˈərəpi/ n. 欧洲
weather /ˈweðər/ n. 天气
cold /kəld/ n. 寒冷的
flight /flaɪt/ n. 飞
have to /ˈhæv tu/ 必须,不得不
hard /hɑːd/ a. 努力
dinner /ˈdɪnər/ n. 晚饭,晚餐
passenger /ˈpæsɪndʒər/ n. 乘客
safety /ˈseiəti/ n. 安全,保险
demonstration /ˌdemənˈstreɪʃən/ n. 展示,演示
enjoy /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ vt. 享受…的乐趣
French /frentʃ/  n. 法国人
nationality /ˌnæʃənləti/ n. 国籍
Italian /ɪtəˈleɪdʒən/  n. 意大利人
job /dʒɒb/ n. 工作
serve /sɜːv/ vt. 服务
before /bɪˈfɔːr/ prep. 在前,从前,

Text

A Flight Attendant

Barbara is a flight attendant. She works for an important airline. She likes the work. It’s interesting.

She travels to Europe and South America. She likes South America. The weather is beautiful. She likes Europe in summer. She doesn’t like winter. It’s very cold.

During a flight Barbara has to work very hard. She serves breakfast, lunch and dinner. She helps the passengers. She gives safety demonstrations and answers questions. She enjoys her work.
Conversation

A. My name is Robert.
   B. How do you do? My name is Alice.
A. Are you French?
   B. Yes, I am. Are you French, too?
A. No, I am not.
   B. What nationality are you?
A. I’m Italian.
   B. What’s your job?
A. I’m an engineer. What’s your job?
   B. I’m a flight attendant.

---

Drills

(A)

—Do you have to be there tonight?
   —Yes, I do. I have to be there tonight.
—Does Mary have to be there tonight?
   —No, she doesn’t. She may go there tomorrow.

   a) fly to Lhasa, your daughter, go there by train
   b) get there before seven, Helen, get there at eight
   c) work during the holidays, your wife, have a rest
   d) go to bed at ten, your older brother, go to bed a little later

(B)

—Do we have to be back today?
   —Yes, you do.
—Do the children have to be back today, too?
   —No, they don’t. They may come back the day after tomorrow.
a) stay there for the night, the girls, come back today  
b) have lunch there, the children, come back for lunch  
c) travel by train, the Dawsons, go there by boat  
d) walk to the palace, our foreign friends, go there by school bus

Exercises
1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer these questions:
   1) What’s the text about? (It’s about a flight attendant.)
   2) What’s her name? ______________________________________________________
   3) Who does she work for? _________________________________________________
   4) Does she like her work? _________________________________________________
   5) Why does she like it? ____________________________________________________
   6) Which places does she travel to? __________________________________________
   7) Does she like South America? ____________________________________________
   8) Why does she like South America? _________________________________________
   9) Does she like Europe? Why? _____________________________________________
  10) Does Barbara have to work hard during the flight? ___________________________
  11) What does she do during the flight? _________________________________________
  12) What else does she have to do? ____________________________________________
  13) She enjoys her work, doesn’t she?  

4. Do the drills.  

5. Turn these into questions:
   1) She has to work ten hours a day. (How long does she have to work everyday?)
   2) Paul has to get up before six. _____________________________________________
   3) Ruth has to be there every other week. ______________________________________
   4) He has to teach fifty children. _____________________________________________
   5) She has to answer the passengers’ questions. _________________________________
   6) She has to stay in her bedroom all day long. _________________________________
   7) Joe has to do a lot of work. _______________________________________________
   8) She has to clean Mr. Brown’s room. ________________________________________

6. Turn these sentences (a-n) into questions using the first word given.
   a. Barbara is a flight attendant. 1) Who is a flight attendant? 2) What does she do?  
      3) What's her job?  
   b. She works for an important airline.  
      1) Who ________________________________________________________?
2) What ____________________________________________?
3) Does ____________________________________________?

c. She likes the work.
   1) Does ____________________________________________?
   2) How ____________________________________________?

d. She travels to Europe and South America.
   1) Where ____________________________________________?
   2) Does ____________________________________________?

e. She likes South America.
   1) What ____________________________________________?
   2) Does ____________________________________________?

f. The weather is beautiful.
   1) What ____________________________________________?
   2) Is ____________________________________________?

g. She likes Europe in summer.
   1) Does ____________________________________________?
   2) What ____________________________________________?

h. She doesn’t like winter.
   1) Does ____________________________________________?
   2) What ____________________________________________?

i. It’s very cold.
   1) What ____________________________________________?
   2) It ____________________________________________?

j. During a flight Barbara has to work very hard.
   1) When ____________________________________________?
   2) Who ____________________________________________?

k. She serves breakfast, lunch, and dinner.
   1) What ____________________________________________?
   2) Does ____________________________________________?

l. She helps the passengers.
   1) Who ____________________________________________?
2) Who ____________________________?  
m. She gives safety demonstrations and answers questions.  
1) What ____________________________?  
2) Does ____________________________?  

n. She enjoys her work.  
1) Who ____________________________?  
2) What ____________________________?  
3) Does ____________________________?  

7. Read these words, paying attention to the endings. 阅读下列单词，注意它们的后缀。  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/s/</th>
<th>maps</th>
<th>cups</th>
<th>thanks</th>
<th>clocks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stops</td>
<td>speaks</td>
<td>sweeps</td>
<td>makes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/z/</td>
<td>jobs</td>
<td>plans</td>
<td>novels</td>
<td>holidays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travels</td>
<td>serves</td>
<td>enjoys</td>
<td>answers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/iz/</td>
<td>classes</td>
<td>brushes</td>
<td>nurses</td>
<td>sentences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misses</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td>raises</td>
<td>announces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ts/</td>
<td>texts</td>
<td>states</td>
<td>seats</td>
<td>baskets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuts</td>
<td>writes</td>
<td>gets</td>
<td>visits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/dz/</td>
<td>words</td>
<td>friends</td>
<td>beds</td>
<td>comrades</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>needs</td>
<td>reads</td>
<td>ends</td>
<td>understands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Give the -ing forms of these verbs. 给下列单词加 ing  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>live</th>
<th>living</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>getting</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>helping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>making</td>
<td>stop</td>
<td>stopping</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serve</td>
<td>serving</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>setting</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>seeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>having</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>singing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td>hoping</td>
<td>plan</td>
<td>planning</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>playing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>giving</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shutting</td>
<td>try</td>
<td>trying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Read the passage and answer the questions.  

Today we started class. There are twenty students in my class this term. There are four boys and sixteen girls in my class. Our teacher’s name is Mr. Smith. He is taller than our teacher last term. I am the tallest student in the class. This term we are going to study grammar and writing more than last term. I like to study grammar. Do you like to study grammar? This term will be harder than the last one. Are you going to come and visit us next summer? I’m going to work hard
in school this term. But I am also going to play basketball and fly kites. I am going to see my Uncle Zhaxi next week. We are going to meet in Xining. Please write to me soon.

1) What did we do today? ______________________________________________________
2) When did the class start? ___________________________________________________
3) How many students are there in the class? _______________________________________
4) Twenty students are in what? ________________________________________________
5) How many boys are there in the class? _________________________________________
6) How many girls are there in the class? _________________________________________
7) Who is Mr. Smith? __________________________________________________________
8) What is the teacher's name? _________________________________________________
9) Is Mr. Smith taller or shorter than the teacher last term? __________________________
10) Who is the tallest student in the class? _________________________________________
11) What is Yontan going to study this term? _______________________________________
12) Who likes to study grammar? _______________________________________________
13) Who is going to work hard? _________________________________________________
14) Where is Yontan going to work hard? _________________________________________
15) Who is going to fly kites? ___________________________________________________
16) Who is going to play basketball? _____________________________________________
17) Who will Yontan go to see next week? _________________________________________
18) Where will Yontan and his Uncle Zhaxi meet? _________________________________
19) Who will meet in Xining? __________________________________________________

10. Put the verbs in brackets in the right form.
1) She _______ (listen) to the radio every morning.
2) Huamo _______ (get) up at 6:30.
3) The little boy _______ (brush) his teeth every morning.
4) My sister _______ (study) both Tibetan and Chinese.
5) Dorji _______ (read) his lessons every day.
6) Dorji _______ (do) his homework every evening.
7) Mr. Green _______ (take) a bus to Lhasa several times a year.
8) I _______ (miss) my mother.
9) Nancy _______ (copy) every text.
10) Helen _______ (play) the piano very well.
Text

Two Thieves

One evening, two thieves go to rob a house. When they reach the house, they dig a hole in a wall. One crawls inside and the other waits outside.

But the thieves do not know something--there are many mice in the house. The woman of the house sees a mouse crawl into the house. “Look, there’s one now crawling into our house,” she says to her husband.

This frightens the thief so much that he quickly crawls outside. He tells the other thief, “A woman sees me crawl inside.”

The other thief does not believe him and says, “I don't believe you. Let’s both crawl into the house together.”

As the two thieves are crawling into the house, two mice also crawl into the house at the same time. The woman sees the two mice crawling into the house and shouts to her husband, “Catch them!” The two thieves are terribly frightened. They think the woman sees them so they run away.

Exercises

1. Answer the following questions.
   a. The house has many what?

   __________________________________________________________

   b. What does the woman see crawl into the house?

   __________________________________________________________

   c. What do the thieves dig? Why?

   __________________________________________________________

   d. Who go to rob a house?

   __________________________________________________________

   e. Why are the two thieves frightened and why do they run away?

   __________________________________________________________
Lesson Twenty-One

New words

country /ˈkʌntri/ n. 国家, 乡村
large /lɑːdʒ/ a. 大的, 巨大的
food /fuːd/ n. 食物, 饭
with /wɪð; wið/ prep. 和…一起, 以
bread /bred/ n. 面包
butter /ˈbʌtə/ n. 黄油, 奶油
meat /miːt/ n. 肉
milk /mɪlk/ n. 牛奶, 乳
cake /keɪk/ n. 蛋糕
basket /ˈbɑːskɪt/ n. 篮子
under /ˈʌndə/ prep. 在…之下
eat /iːt/ vt. 吃
field /fiːld/ n. 田野

pick /pɪk/ vt. 摘
drive /draɪv/ vi. 开车, 驾驶
plane /plæn/ n. 飞机
journey /ˈdʒɜːni/ n. 旅行
pleasant /ˈpliːznt/ a. 令人愉快的
feel /fiːl/ v. 感觉, 以为
tired /ˈtaɪrd/ a. 疲劳的, 疲乏的, 累的
sleep /sliːp/ vi. 睡觉
transcription /trænskrɪptʃən/ n. 转录, 抄本
sit /sɪt/ v. 坐

Text

A Day in the Country

Mr. and Mrs. White live in a large city. One Sunday, they went to the country. They took some food with them. Mrs. White put bread, butter, meat, milk, fruit and cake in a basket. They sat under a large tree and ate lunch. They talked about their trip to England and they picked flowers. They drove home in the evening.

Conversation

A. When did you arrive in Lhasa?
B. Only yesterday.
A. Did you come by plane?
B. Well, we took the train to Chengdu and then flew to Lhasa.
A. How did you like the journey?
B. It was pleasant and I enjoyed it.
A. Do you feel tired after the long journey?
B. No, not at all. I had a good sleep on the train.

A. 你们什么时候到拉萨的?
B. 昨天才到。
A. 你们是坐飞机来的吗?
B. 我们坐火车到成都，然后从那里坐飞机到拉萨的。
A. 你们的旅行怎么样?
B. 非常愉快，我很喜欢。
A. 这么长的旅程，你觉得累吗?
B. 不，一点都不，我在火车上睡得很好。

Drills

(A)
—Did you come by train?
—Yes, I did.
—Did Peter come by train, too?
—No, he didn’t. He came by plane.

a) arrive yesterday, Helen, the day before yesterday
b) go home on Sunday, David, on Saturday
c) visit the city in spring, Nora, in autumn
d) get here on the 20th, Joe, on the 22nd

(B)
—Did you meet before?
—Yes, we did.
—When did you meet?
—In 1982.

a) see the film, in February
b) visit the place, in April 1979
c) stay at this hotel, in 1983
d) work there, in 1970

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
1) Who is the text about? (It’s about Mr. and Mrs. White.)
2) Where do they live? _________________________________________________________
3) What did they do on Sunday? ________________________________________________
4) Did they take any food with them? ____________________________________________
5) What food did they take with them? ___________________________________________
6) Where did they put the food? _________________________________________________
7) Where did they eat their lunch? _______________________________________________
8) Did they talk? _______________________________________________________________
9) What did they talk about? ____________________________________________________
10) What did they do in the afternoon? ___________________________________________
11) When did they drive home? _________________________________________________
12) Did they have a good time? ________________________________________________

4. Do the drills. ______________________________________________________________

5. Learn the past forms of these verbs: 学习动词的过去式。
meet (met) come (came) get (got) go (went) know (knew) take (took) see (saw) do (did) write (wrote) sing (sang) draw (drew) drive (drove) hear (heard) fly (flew) give (gave) think (thought) leave (left) swim (swam) have (had) tell (told) put (put) make (made) sweep (swept) shut (shut) speak (spoke) feel (felt) be (was, were) try (tried) marry (married) copy (copied) love (loved) excuse (excused) smoke (smoked) plan (planned) stop (stopped)

6. Answer these questions:
1) What time did you get up yesterday? (I got up at half past five.)
2) What did you do after you got up? ____________________________________________
3) Where did you have breakfast? ______________________________________________
4) Did you drive to work? _____________________________________________________
5) What time did your work start? ______________________________________________
6) How long did you work in the morning? _______________________________________
7) What time did you have lunch? ______________________________________________
8) Did you come home for lunch? ______________________________________________
9) What time did you come home? ______________________________________________
10) What did you do yesterday evening? _________________________________________
11) What time did you go to bed? ______________________________________________
12) Did you have a good sleep? ________________________________________________

7. Learn to read the transcriptions. 学习读音标。

| /laːdʒ/ | /fuːd/ | /mɪlk/ | /ˈkɛrk/ |
| /breɪd/ | /mɪt/ | /plem/ | /drəʊv/ |
| /sliːp/ | /ˈtætəd/ | /wɪd/ | /prɪk/ |
| /ˈbaːta/ | /ˈbaːskɪt/ | /ˈpleznt/ | /ˈdʒ3ːni/ |

8. Answer the questions below.

1) Who live in a large city? Mr. and Mrs. White live in a large city.
2) Where does Mr. White live? ________________________________________________
3) Where does Mrs. White live? ______________________________________________
4) Where do Mr. and Mrs. White live? _________________________________________
5) Do Mr. and Mrs. White live in a small city? _________________________________
6) Where did they go on Sunday? _____________________________________________
7) Who went to the country one Sunday? ______________________________________
8) Where did Mr. and Mrs. White go one Sunday? ______________________________
9) What did they take with them? ____________________________________________
10) Where did they take some food? __________________________________________
11) Who took some food? _____________________________________________________
12) What was in the basket? _________________________________________________
13) Where did Mrs. White put the meat? _______________________________________
14) Who put milk in a basket? _______________________________________________
15) Where did they sit? _______________________________________________________
16) Who sat under a large tree? _____________________________________________
17) Where did they eat lunch? ________________________________________________
18) Who ate lunch under a large tree? _________________________________________
19) What did they talk about? _______________________________________________
20) Who went to England? ___________________________________________________

1) Did your sister arrive on Sunday? Yes, she arrived on Sunday.
2) Did you take the train? Yes, I ____________________________
3) Did Tom see the film in April? Yes, ________________________________.
4) Did Joe get here on the 22nd? Yes, ________________________________
5) Did Helen sing a lovely song? Yes, ________________________________
6) Did Bill feel sick? No, ________________________________
7) Did the students sweep the classroom? Yes, ________________________________
8) Did Dorji leave this morning? Yes, ________________________________
9) Did he travel alone? No, ________________________________
10) Did Lhamo walk to town? No, ________________________________

10. Write sentences using the past tense.

1) fly Lhasa last year. I flew to Lhasa last year.
2) hear Helen piano ________________________________
3) walk and pick flowers ________________________________
4) eat lunch large tree ________________________________
5) take bus to work ________________________________
6) talk about trip ________________________________
7) come home at 5:00 ________________________________
8) meet last year ________________________________
9) feel tired after trip ________________________________
10) write two letters ________________________________
Lesson Twenty-Two

New Words

something /ˈsamθɪŋ/ pron. 某事,某物
parents /ˈpeərənts/ n. 父母
already /əˈlɛdʒ/ ad. 已经
Australian /ɒˈstreɪliən/ n. 澳大利亚人
last /lɑːst/ a. 最近的
secretary /ˈsekrətri/ n. 秘书
company /ˈkʌmpəni/ n. 公司
director /ˈdaiərɛktər/ n. 主管
go ago /əˈgəʊ/ ad. 以前
technical /tekˈnɪkl/ a. 工艺的,技术的
architect /əˈkrɪktət/ n. 建筑师,设计师
government /ɡəˈvərnment/ n. 政府

office /ˈɒfɪs/ n. 办公室
center /ˈsɛntə/ n. 中央,中心
overseas /ˌəʊvərˈziː/ ad. 海外的,外国
examination /ɪɡˌzæməˈneɪʃn/ n. 考试
too /tuː/ ad. 太,非常
bad /bæd/ a. 坏的,劣质的,不利的
pass /pɑːs/ vt. 通过
easy /ˈezi/ a. 容易的
factory /ˈfeɪktərɪ/ n. 工厂
rest /rest/ vi. & n. 其余

text

My Family

I want to tell you something about my family. There are six people in my family altogether--two girls, two boys and my parents. Both of my sisters are already married. My younger sister got married last month. Her husband is an Australian. She lives in Canberra now and is a secretary for a company director. My eldest sister got married three years ago. She has got a young daughter. My brother Peter is a student at a technical college. He wants to be an architect. I started working six months ago. I work in a government office. I live with my parents in a small house near the center of town. I hope to go overseas one day for a holiday.

Conversation

A. How was the examination?
B. Not too bad. I think I passed in English.
A. Were the questions easy?
B. No, not very. I could answer twelve of the questions. They were very easy. But I couldn’t answer the rest. They were too difficult for me. But I think I could pass.

A. 考试怎么样？
B. 还可以，我想我的英语通过了。
A. 题目简单吗？
B. 不，不是非常简单。我能答上十二道题。那些很简单。但是剩下的对我来说太难了，因此没答上，不过我觉得我能通过。

**Drills**

(A)

—Where were you this morning?
   —I was in the classroom.
—Where was Jane?
   —She was there too.

a) in the factory, David  
b) in the bedroom, Nancy  
c) in the hall, your teacher  
d) in the hospital, your wife


(B)

—Were you in town yesterday?
   —Yes, I was.
—Was Bob in town, too?
   —No, he wasn’t. He was at home.

a) in the University on Friday, John, in the country  
b) here last year, Mary, in London  
c) in Lhasa last summer, Joe, in Amdo  
d) in this city in 1985, your daughter, in Kham

**Exercises**

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions according to the text:
   1) How many people are there in your family? (There’re six people in my family.)
   2) Who are they? ___________________________________________________
   3) Are your sisters married? ___________________________________________
   4) When did your younger sister get married? _____________________________
   5) What nationality is her husband? _____________________________________
   6) Where does your younger sister live? _________________________________
   7) What’s her job? ___________________________________________________
   8) When did your eldest sister get married? ______________________________
   9) Has she got any children? _________________________________________
  10) What does your brother do? _________________________________________
  11) Where does he study? _____________________________________________
  12) What does he want to be? _________________________________________
  13) Are you working? ________________________________________________
  14) When did you start working? _______________________________________
  15) Where do you work? ______________________________________________
  16) Where do you live? _______________________________________________
  17) What do you hope to do one day? ___________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Fill in the blanks with was or were. || were  was 用 was 和 were 填空。
   1) Where ______ you last night?
   2) I ______ a school teacher in 1970.
   3) How ______ things at home?
   4) Father ______ not very well last week.
   5) Did you go to the film? ______ it good?
   6) Both my sisters ______ in England at that time.
   7) Alice ______ then a school-girl.
   8) We ______ not here four years ago.
   9) Did you stay here last summer? What ______ your room number?
   10) ______ you in town at eight o’clock this morning?
6. Turn these into interrogative and negative sentences.

1) I have something to say. Do you have anything to say? I don’t have anything to say.
2) There’s something in the basket.
3) I have got something to read.
4) She told me something about it.
5) Mary knows something about it.
6) We want to get something to eat?

7. Turn these sentences (a-n) into questions using the first word given.

a. I want to tell you something about my family.
   1) What do you want to tell me?
   2) Who do you want to tell something about your family?
   3) Do you want to tell me something about your family?

b. There are six people in my family altogether--two girls, two boys and my parents.
   1) How___________________________________________________________?
   2) How___________________________________________________________?
   3) How___________________________________________________________?
   4) Are____________________________________________________________?

c. Both of my sisters are already married.
   1) Are____________________________________________________________?
   2) Who____________________________________________________________?

d. My younger sister got married last month.
   1) Who____________________________________________________________?
   2) Did______________________________________________________________?
   3) When____________________________________________________________?

e. Her husband is an Australian.
   1) Where___________________________________________________________?
   2) Who____________________________________________________________?
   3) Her______________________________________________________________?

f. She lives in Canberra now and is a secretary for a company director.
   1) What____________________________________________________________?
   2) Who____________________________________________________________?
   3) Where____________________________________________________________?

g. My eldest sister got married three years ago.
   1) When____________________________________________________________?
2) Who_______________________________________________________________?
3) Is_______________________________________________________________?

h. She has got a young daughter.
   1) Who_______________________________________________________________?
   2) Does_______________________________________________________________?

i. My brother Peter is a student at a technical college.
   1) Who_______________________________________________________________?
   2) Is_______________________________________________________________?
   3) Where_______________________________________________________________?

j. He wants to be an architect.
   1) What_______________________________________________________________?
   2) Who_______________________________________________________________?

k. I started working six months ago.
   1) When_______________________________________________________________?
   2) You_______________________________________________________________?

l. I work in a government office.
   1) Where_______________________________________________________________?
   2) Do_______________________________________________________________?

m. I live with my parents in a small house near the center of town.
   1) Where_______________________________________________________________?
   2) Do_______________________________________________________________?

n. I hope to go overseas one day for a holiday.
   1) Where_______________________________________________________________?
   2) What_______________________________________________________________?
Lesson Twenty-Three

A New Flat

Last month the Smiths moved into a new flat in Muir Road. The flat has three bedrooms, a large living-room, a bathroom and a kitchen.

Before they moved to Muir Road, they lived in a very poor neighborhood. The street was dirty. When it rained there was water everywhere.

The Smiths are very happy in their new flat. The house is big and clean. It is nice and quiet. There is a garden in front of the building. Their children can play there.
Conversation

A. Good afternoon. Is this house for sale?
B. That’s right.
A. May I have a look at it?
B. Yes, of course. Come in.
A. How much does the house cost?
B. 6,500 yuan.
A. I like this house, but I can’t decide. My wife must see it first.
B. Women always have the last word.

Drills
(A)

—May I have a look at the book?
—Yes, of course.
—May I take it home?
—Sorry, you can’t. You mustn’t take it home.

a) have a rest here, smoke here
b) use this recorder, the flowers, take it out of the room
c) have a look at the flowers, pick them
d) go to the dance, take the children there
—Were there any hospitals in the city in those days?
—Yes, there were.
—How many hospitals were there in the city?
—There were three.

a) colleges, in this town, four
b) shops, in that street, eleven
c) fine buildings, in this city, twelve
d) garden, in the neighborhood, two

**Exercises**

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer these questions:
   1) What did the Smiths do last month? (They moved into a new flat.)
   2) Where is the house? ____________________________________________
   3) Is it a big flat? ________________________________________________
   4) How many rooms does it have? __________________________________
   5) How many bedrooms are there in it? ______________________________
   6) Does it have a bathroom? ____ ___________________________________
   7) What other rooms are there in it? ________________________________
   8) Where did the Smiths live before they moved to Muir Road? __________
   9) What was the street like? _______________________________________
   10) What happened when it rained? _________________________________
   11) Are the Smiths happy in their new flat? Why? _____, __________________________
   12) Is there a garden near the building? ______________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Read the figures
   67    sixty-seven
   89    eighty-nine
   125   one hundred and twenty-five
   437   four hundred and thirty-seven
   1,020 one thousand and twenty
   5,900 five thousand nine hundred
   3,685 three thousand, six hundred and eighty-five
   12,040 twelve thousand forty
   500,000 five hundred thousand
   674,000 six hundred and seventy-four thousand
6. Turn these sentences into questions.

1) It’s raining.  Is it raining?

2) It often rains here in summer. ____________________________________________

3) It didn’t cost much. ______________________________________________________

4) The kitchen wasn’t very big. ______________________________________________

5) The houses were not for sale. ______________________________________________

6) We can’t decide now. _____________________________________________________

7) She mustn’t work like that. ______________________________________________

8) They won’t have time to do it. ____________________________________________

7. Read the transcriptions.

8. Put these words in the blanks below: in, the, of, on a, to.

There are twenty students _____ our classroom. Mr. Smith’s desk is _____ _____

front _____ _____ room. _____ world map is _____ _____ right side _____

_____ room. Six big windows are _____ _____ left side _____ _____ room.

There is one blackboard _____ _____ front wall and another blackboard _____

_____ back wall. There are some extra stools _____ _____ back right corner

_____ _____ room. We keep our books _____ _____ bookcase _____

_____ right side _____ _____ room. _____ top _____ _____ bookcase

is _____ flowerpot. Next _____ _____ bookcase is _____ small closet where

we put _____ broom and dustbin. We always keep our classroom clean and tidy.
10. Turn these sentences (a-j) into questions using the first word given.

a. Last month the Smiths moved into a new flat in Muir Road.
   1) When did the Smiths move into a new flat in Muir Road?
   2) Where did the Smiths move into a new flat?
   3) Did the Smiths move into a new flat in Muir Road?

b. The flat has three bedrooms, a large living-room, a bathroom and a kitchen.
   1) How_______________________________________________________________?
   2) The flat____________________________________________________________?

c. Before they moved to Muir Road, they lived in a very poor neighborhood.
   1) Where_____________________________________________________________?
   2) What______________________________________________________________?

d. The street was dirty.
   1) What_______________________________________________________________?
   2) Was_______________________________________________________________?

e. When it rained there was water everywhere.
   1) Where_____________________________________________________________?
   2) When______________________________________________________________?

f. The Smiths are very happy in their new flat.
   1) Who_______________________________________________________________?
   2) Why_______________________________________________________________?

g. The building is big and clean.
   1) What_______________________________________________________________?
   2) Is_______________________________________________________________?

h. It is nice and quiet.
   1) What_______________________________________________________________?
2) Is__________________________________________________________?

i. There is a garden in front of the building.

1) Where______________________________________________________?

2) What______________________________________________________?

j. Their children can play there.

1) Who______________________________________________________?

2) Where______________________________________________________?
Lesson Twenty-Four

New Words

be born 出生
at the age of 在...岁时
record /rekɔ:d/ vt. 录音
happen /hæpən/ vi. 发生
quickly /kwɪkli/ ad. 快地,迅速地
sell, sold 卖,销售
million /ˈmɪljən/ n. 百万
record /rekɔ:d/ n. 唱片
serve /sɜːv/ vt. 服务,供应
army /ˈɑːmi/ n. 军队,陆军
appear /əˈpɪə/ vi. 出现
bring, brought (bring的过去式) 带来,拿来
together /təˈgeðə/ ad. 一起
musical /ˈmjuːzɪkl/ a. 音乐的
sound /sɔnd/ n. 声音
black /blæk/ a. 黑色的
period /ˈprɪəriəd/ n. 一段时间
music /ˈmjuːzɪk/ n. 音乐
die /dai/ 死,死亡
meeting /ˈmiːtɪŋ/ n. 开会
successful /səkˈsuːsfl/ a. 成功的,圆满的

Text

Elvis Presley

Elvis Presley was born in Tupelo, Mississippi, on January 8, 1935. At the age of 13, Elvis and his family moved to Memphis, Tennessee. There, Elvis recorded his first song in 1954. After that, things happened quickly. He sold millions of records, served in the U. S. Army, went to Hollywood and appeared in 33 films.

Elvis brought together the musical sounds of blacks and country people. His songs started a new period of American music. He died on August 16, 1977 in his home in Memphis.

Conversation

A. Hello, Professor Heilman!
B. Hello, Tenzin. How are you?
A. Fine, thank you. And you?
B. I’m very well. Thank you.
A. You were in Lhasa last week, weren’t you?
B. Yes, I was. I was there for a meeting.
A. When did you get back?
B. Only last night.

A. है, नेरुम जेयन्स!
B. ना, दंग्रो ! आपका कैसा है?
A. आपका ठीक है, धन्यवाद! आप कैसे है?
B. मैं ठीक हूँ, धन्यवाद!
A. आप आखिरकार ल्साम पहुँचे है?
B. याच्च, मैंने वहाँ कैसे जाने?
A. आपको कैसे ल्साम पहुँचने की जरूरत है?
B. मैंने वहाँ कैसे पहुँचा जाने?

Drill

(A)
—When were you born?
— I was born on April 4, 1968.
—Where were you born?
— I was born in Amdo.

a) your sister, July 21, 1967, Kham
b) Peter, February 3, 1973, Boston
c) Shakespeare, 1564, Stratford-on-Avon
d) Columbus, 1451, Genoa, Italy

(B)
—Where were you yesterday?
— I was in town.
—When did you get back?
— This morning.

a) last Sunday, in the country, Monday morning
b) last winter, Lhasa, on March 21
c) last year, England, at the end of the year  
d) last month, Chicago, two weeks ago

**Exercises**

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer these questions:

   1) Who is the text about? It’s about Elvis Presley.  
   2) What was his nationality? ________________________________  
   3) When was he born? ________________________________  
   4) Where was he born? ________________________________  
   5) What happened when he was 13? ________________________________  
   6) Where is Memphis? ________________________________  
   7) When did he record his first song? ________________________________  
   8) How old was he then? ________________________________  
   9) Was he successful? ________________________________  
  10) Did he serve in the army? ________________________________  
  11) Where did he go and work later? ________________________________  
  12) How many films did he appear in? ________________________________  
  13) Whose music did he learn from? ________________________________  
  14) How successful were his songs? ________________________________  
  15) When did he die? ________________________________  
  16) Where did he die? ________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Turn these into tag questions:

   1) She was then a college student. She was then a college student, wasn’t she?  
   2) You were children when you first met. ________________________________  
   3) Your friend arrived the day before yesterday. ________________________________  
   4) You like Tibetan music. ________________________________  
   5) Nancy’s mother knows Spanish. ________________________________  
   6) Your brother is serving in the army. ________________________________  
   7) You’re going to record the song. ________________________________  
   8) They will play the music. ________________________________  
   9) We shall need the recorder. ________________________________
10) You can sing this German song. __________________________________________________

11) We must do it quickly ________________________________________________________

6. Answer these questions:
1) When were you born? I was born in 1967.
2) Where were you born? ______________________________________________________
3) When did you come here to this school? ______________________________________
4) Did you come by train or by bus? ___________________________________________
5) When did you start to study at this college? __________________________________
6) Did you learn English before you came here? ________________________________
7) You’re now studying here, aren’t you? ______________________________________
8) How many English classes do you have every week? ___________________________
9) When do you have them? ___________________________________________________
10) Who is your English teacher? _______________________________________________
11) Is she an old teacher or a young teacher? ____________________________________
12) Does she speak good English? _____________________________________________
13) What kinds of exercises do you do in class? __________________________________
14) Do you often see English films? ____________________________________________
15) Do you understand them? _________________________________________________
16) Do you do much reading? _________________________________________________
17) How do you like English? _________________________________________________
18) What do you plan to do? ___________________________________________________

7. Read the transcriptions:

8. Turn these sentences (a-g) into questions using the first word given.

1) Elvis Presley was born in Tupelo, Mississippi, on January 8, 1935.
a. Who was born in Tupelo, Mississippi, on January 8, 1935.
b. When was Elvis Presley born?
c. Where was Elvis Presley born?

2) At the age of 13, Elvis and his family moved to Memphis, Tennessee.
   a. How old__________________________________________________________?
   b. Who_____________________________________________________________
   c. Where___________________________________________________________?

3) There, Elvis recorded his first song in 1954.
   a. Who_____________________________________________________________
   b. When____________________________________________________________

4) He sold millions of records, served in the U. S. Army, went to Hollywood and appeared in 33 films.
   a. Who_____________________________________________________________
   b. How____________________________________________________________
   c. How____________________________________________________________

5) Elvis brought together the musical sounds of blacks and country people.
   a. Who_____________________________________________________________

6) His songs started a new period of American music.
   a. Who_____________________________________________________________
   b. What____________________________________________________________

7) He died on August 16, 1977 in his home in Memphis.
   a. When___________________________________________________________
   b. Where___________________________________________________________
Lesson Twenty-Five

New Words

famous /ˈfeɪməs/ adj. 著名的
writer /ˈraɪtər/ n. 作者
poor /pɔːr/ a. 贫穷的
money /ˈmʌni/ n. 钱
different /ˈdɪfrənt/ a. 不同的
later /ˈleɪtər/ adj. 之后，以后
return /rɪˈtɜːn/ vi. 返回，回来
find, found /faʊnd/ v. 寻找
instead /ɪnˈsted/ adv. 代替，更换
idea /ˈaɪdɪə/ n. 主意，想法，念头
ring, rang /ræŋ/ (v) 打(电话)
become, became /ˈbɪkəm/ 变成，成为
rich /rɪtʃ/ a. 富裕，有钱的
health /helθ/ n. 健康，卫生
own /aʊn/ n. 自己的
life /laɪf/ n. 生命
hold /həʊld/ vt. 拿着，握住
line /laɪn/ vi. 线，电话线
OK /əʊˈkeɪ/ a. & ad. 好，对，行
be out /bəʊt/ 主义，想法，念头
story /ˈstɔːri/ n. 故事，小说
he takes his life /heɪ tɛks hɪz laɪf/ 自杀

Text

Jack London

Jack London is a famous American writer. He was born on January 12, 1876 in San Francisco, California. His family was very poor, and Jack had to leave school to make money. He worked hard at many different jobs.

Later, Jack returned to school, but he didn’t stay. In 1897, he went to Alaska to find gold. Instead, he found ideas there for his books and stories. He returned home and started to write. His writings were successful, and he became rich and famous in his twenties.

Jack London was not a happy man. In poor health, he took his life in 1916. He was only 40 years old.
Conversations

A. Hello, John here. Can I speak to Mary?
B. Hold the line please.
A. OK.
B. Sorry, but she’s out.
A. Would you tell her I rang?
B. I’d be glad to.

A. नमस्ते, जॉन. मैं मारी के साथ बातचीत कर सकता हूं?
B. ध्यान दें कृपया।
A. ठीक है।
B. वापसी के लिए दूरी है।
A. आप उसके लिए मेरे खिलाफ फ़ोन की गई की जाएँगी?
B. ऐसा खुशीनाम...
Exercises

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer these questions:
   1) Who was Jack London? He was an American writer.
   2) Was he very famous? ________________________________
   3) When was he born? ________________________________
   4) Where was he born? ________________________________
   5) In which state is the city of San Francisco? __________
   6) Was his family rich? ________________________________
   7) Did Jack go to school? ______________________________
   8) What did he do after he left school? _________________
   9) How did he work? _________________________________
   10) Did he return to school later? _______________________
   11) What did he do in 1897? ___________________________
   12) What for? ______________________________________
   13) Did he find gold there? ____________________________
   14) Was the trip successful? ___________________________
   15) What did he do after he returned home? _____________
   16) How did people like his writings? _________________
   17) What happened because of it? _____________________
   18) How old was he then? _____________________________
   19) Was Jack London a happy man after he became rich? __
   20) Why wasn’t he happy? _____________________________
   21) What happened in 1916? ___________________________
   22) How old was he when he died? _____________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Make sentences after the models with the given words:
   1) Can I speak to Mary?
      a) go with you
      b) use your pen
      c) take the CDs home
d) have a look at it

2) Would you tell her I rang?
   a) tell me your name
   b) sit down
   c) write down your phone number
   d) find something for us to eat

3) I’d be glad to.
   a) help you
   b) do it for you
   c) have a try
   d) be quiet

6. Learn these verb forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Fill in the blanks with pronouns.

1) Tell ______ how to do it.
2) She wants to ring ______ up tonight.
3) Make ______ some tea, please.
4) Sing ______ a song, will you?
5) They asked ______ to go with ______.
6) The house cost ______ a lot of money.
7) Read the text after ______.
8) We’ll put ______ in room 203.
8. Do the crossword puzzle.

Across  1. 拿着,握  3. 之后,以后  4. 寻找  6. 变成,成为
变成,成为  9. 代替,更换  10. 好,对,行
想法,念头 12. 不同的  14. 贫穷的  16. 作家
故事  20. 打(电话)  21. 健康,卫生

Down:  2. 线,电话线  3. 生命  4. 寻找
8. 著名的  10. 自己的  13. 返回,回来  15. 钱
17. 富裕,有钱的  18. 打(电话)

He is not at home. He is o___.

12 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21
Lesson Twenty-Six

New Words

grandfather /'grændfə/ n. 祖父,外祖父

coffee /'kɒfi/ n. 咖啡

grandmother /'grændmə/ n. 祖母,外祖母

buy /baɪ/ vt. 购物,买

cold /kɔld/ n. 感冒

funny /'fʌni/ a. 滑稽的,好笑的

nearly /'nəli/ ad. 附近的

still /stɪl/ ad. 静止的,一动不动的

than /ðən; ðæn/ conj. 比较,比

if /ɪf/ conj. 如果,假如

afraid /ə'freɪd/ a. 害怕的,心里的

early /'ɛəli/ a. 早的

always /'ɔlweɪz/ 总是

same /seɪm/ a. 同一的,相同的

since /'sɪns/ conj. & prep. 自…以来

use to /'juːstʊ/ 以前曾是

chemist /'kemɪst/ n. 化学家,药剂师

harder /'hɑːdər/ a. 更难的,更艰苦的

lead /liːd/ n. 过(生活)

simple /'sɪmpl/ a. 简单的,朴素的

message /'mesɪdʒ/ n. 消息,信息

Text

My Grandfather

My grandfather has lived with us since my grandmother died six years ago. He used to be a chemist. He is nearly eighty but he is still in good health.

Grandfather leads a simple life. He likes to have an early breakfast and he always has the same thing for breakfast: rice, fruit and coffee.

After breakfast he takes a walk to buy the morning paper. He has done this every morning for years and everybody in the street knows him.

Grandfather has not been very well this month. He has had a bad cold for the last few weeks, and has been in bed for a few days.
I like to hear him talk about life when he was a boy. He tells us many funny stories. He always says, “Life was much harder then than it is today.”

Conversaion
A. Hello. David Black speaking. May I have a word with Jane?
B. I’ll see if she is in.
A. OK.
B. I’m afraid she’s not here.
A. Could you take a message?
B Yes, of course.

Drills
(A)
—Have you done your homework?
—Yes, I have.
—Has Tom done his homework?
—No, he hasn’t.
a) write down the new words, Helen
b) memorize the text, Bill
c) listened to the recording, Betty
d) clean your room, boys

(B)
—Where’s Kitty?
—She’s gone to the Palace Museum.
—Have you ever been there?
—Yes, I’ve been there once.
a) Tom, the Summer palace, a few times
b) Sally, the History Museum, a couple of times.
c) the Greens, Lhasa, many times
d) children, Amdo, lots of times.

**Exercises**

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) What’s the text about? (It’s about the writer’s grandfather.)
   2) How old is he? _________________________________________________
   3) Who is he living with? ___________________________________________
   4) How long has he lived with them? _________________________________
   5) Is he in good health? ____________________________________________
   6) What kind of life does he lead? ____________________________________
   7) What does he usually have for breakfast? ____________________________
   8) What does he do after breakfast? _________________________________
   9) Has he always done this? ________________________________________
  10) Do many people in the street know him? _____________________________
  11) What was his job? ______________________________________________
  12) How has he been recently? _______________________________________
  13) He has had a cold, hasn’t he? _____________________________________
  14) Has he been (stayed) in bed for a few days? _________________________
  15) Does he often tell about his life when he was a boy? ________________
  16) He tells the children many funny stories, doesn’t he? _________________
  17) What does he often say? _________________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Learn these verb forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweep</td>
<td>swept</td>
<td>swept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. Turn these into questions:
1) I have been here for five years. How long have you been here?
2) We have had 26 lessons. _____________________________________________.
3) Jane has put the clothes in the wardrobe. ________________________________________.
4) Anna has been to that place eight times. ________________________________________.
5) She has been a flight attendant since 1984. ________________________________________.
6) Alice has bought a pound of fruit. ______________________________________________.
7) I have taken Room 405. ____________________________________________________.
8) They have been to Qinghua University. __________________________________________.

7. Turn these sentences (a-l) into questions using the first word given.
a. My grandfather has lived with us since my grandmother died six years ago.
   1) Who has lived with us since my grandmother died six years ago.
   2) Who died six years ago?
   3) When did the grandmother die?
b. He used to be a chemist.
   1) What_____________________________________________________________?
c. He is nearly eighty but he is still in good health.
   1) How_____________________________________________________________?
   2) Is________________________________________________________________?
d. Grandfather leads a simple life.
   1) Who______________________________________________________________?
e. He likes to have an early breakfast and he always has the same thing for breakfast: rice, fruit, and coffee.
   1) What_______________________________________________________________?
   2) Who _____________________________________________________________?
f. After, breakfast he takes a walk to buy the morning paper.
   1) What______________________________________________________________?
   2) What______________________________________________________________?
g. He has done this every morning for years and everybody in the street knows him.
   1) How______________________________________________________________?
2) Who____________________________________________________________?

3) What____________________________________________________________?

h. Grandfather has not been very well this month.
   1) Who____________________________________________________________?

i. He has had a bad cold for the last few weeks, and has been in bed for a few days.
   1) What____________________________________________________________?
   2) Where__________________________________________________________

j. I like to hear him talk about life when he was a boy.
   1) What____________________________________________________________?

k. He tells us many funny stories.
   1) What____________________________________________________________?

l. He always says, “Life was much harder then than it is today.”
   1) What____________________________________________________________?

8. Read the transcriptions:

/əˈfriːd/ /ˈbaɪ/ /ˈæːli/ /kəfi/ /kɔʊld/ /ˈkɛmɪst/
/ɪf/ /ˈliːd/ /ˈfænɪ/ /juːzd/ /ˈmesɪdʒ/ /ˈɔːlweɪz/
/stɪl/ /ˈsms/ /ˈsɛm/ /ˈsɪmpl/
Lesson Twenty-Seven (A)

New Words

neighbor /ˈnerbə/ n. 邻居
defined as

pilot /ˈpaɪlət/ n. 飞行员
defined as

defined as

defined as

defined as

defined as

defined as

defined as

defined as

defined as

defined as

Text

Our Neighbor

Mr. Hill is our new next door neighbor. He is a pilot.
He will fly to New York next month. The month after next he will fly to Tokyo.
At the moment he’s in Madrid. He flew to Spain a week ago. He will return to London the week after next.
He is only forty-one years old and he has already been to every country in the world.
Mr. Hill is a very lucky man. But his wife isn’t very lucky. She usually stays at home!
Conversation

A. Hello, Ken.
B. Hello, George.
A. Have you just been to the cinema?
B. Yes, I have.
A. What’s on?
B. “Paris in the Spring.”
A. Oh, I’ve already seen it. I saw it on a BBC television program last year. It’s an old film, but it’s very good.
B. Paris is a very beautiful city.
A. I have never been there. Have you ever been there, Ken?
B. Yes, I have. I was there in April.
A. Paris in the Spring, eh?
B. It was spring, but the weather was awful. It rained all the time.
A. Just like dear old London!
B. 巴黎是个非常美丽的城市。
A. 我从未去过那里。你去过吗，肯?
B. 是的，四月份我在那里。
A. 正是春天的巴黎，对吧?
B. 那时侯正是春天，不过天气很糟糕，老是下雨。
A. 就像老伦敦一样啊！

Drills

(A)
—Have you had supper?
—Yes, I have.
—Where did you have it?
—I had it at my aunt’s.

a) find your pen, in my desk
b) buy any books, in the book store
c) have a bath, at my uncle’s
d) see my dictionary, on your bed

(B)
—How long have you been in this college?
—I’ve been here for two years.
—Has Sarah been here long?
—No, she’s just been here for one year.

a) in Lhasa twenty yeas, Helen, half a year
b) a teacher, five years, Joe, a few months
c) in China, more than a year, your wife, a couple of weeks
d) away four months, Tony, half a week

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) Who’s Mr. Hill? He’s our neighbor.
   2) What’s his job? ________________________________________________
   3) What’s he going to do next month? ______________________________
   4) Will he fly to New York the month after next?______________________
   5) Where will he fly to? __________________________________________
   6) Where’s he now? _____________________________________________
   7) Where’s Madrid? _____________________________________________
   8) When did he fly to Spain?____________________________________
   9) When will he return to London?________________________________
10) How old is Mr. Hill?

11) Has he been to many countries?

12) Do you think Mr. Hill is lucky?

13) Do you think his wife is lucky?

14) Why do you think so?

4. Do the drills.

5. Answer these questions.
   1) Where has George been to? He’s been to the cinema.
   2) What’s on at the cinema?
   3) Has Ken seen the film?
   4) When did he see it?
   5) Did he see it in the cinema?
   6) Is Paris a beautiful city?
   7) Has George ever been in Paris?
   8) What about Ken? Has he ever been there?
   9) When was he there?
   10) That was spring, wasn’t it?
   11) Did he enjoy his stay there?
   12) Why?
   13) What is the weather like in London?

6. Learn the verb forms:

 marry married married marrying
 marries
 study studied studied studying
 studies
 copy copied copied copying
 copies
 try tried tried trying
 tries
 plan planned planned planning
 plans
 stop stopped stopped stopping
 stops
 chat chatted chatted chatting
 chats
 live lived lived living
 lives
 smoke smoked smoked smoking
 smokes
 pass passed passed passing
 passes

7. Compare the vowel sounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/e/</th>
<th>/eɪ/</th>
<th>/æ/</th>
<th>/ɛ/</th>
<th>/əɪ/</th>
<th>/ə/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>met</td>
<td>meit</td>
<td>bæg</td>
<td>beg</td>
<td>laik</td>
<td>læk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>leit</td>
<td>læg</td>
<td>leg</td>
<td>baik</td>
<td>bæk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wet</td>
<td>weit</td>
<td>sæt</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>fait</td>
<td>fæt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hed</td>
<td>qeit</td>
<td>føt</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>sait</td>
<td>sæt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson Twenty-Seven (B)

Text

The Temple God Eats Tsamba

Many years ago, a poor man named Dongzhi had a rich neighbor. This neighbor had a lot of tsamba. He was also very greedy and never shared his tsamba with anyone.

One day Dongzhi ran out of tsamba and thought, “If I go to my neighbor’s house to ask for some tsamba, he will refuse. I need to trick him into giving me some.”

That evening Dongzhi took firewood to his garden and set it on fire. His rich neighbor noticed this and was puzzled. He went to Dongzhi’s house and inquired, “Why are you burning wood this evening, Dongzhi?”

Dongzhi said, “Yesterday I heard people saying tsamba in Lhasa is very expensive. So I will make some tsamba and go to Lhasa to sell it.”

The rich neighbor thought this was an excellent idea and said to Dongzhi, “My dear neighbor, can I go to Lhasa and sell tsamba with you?”

Dongzhi replied, “Of course.”

The next morning the rich man loaded a yak with two bags of tsamba. Dongzhi put two bags filled with grass and leaves on a donkey.

That evening on the road to Tibet the sky became dark. The two men sought refuge in a temple. The rich man was very tired and quickly fell asleep.

Dongzhi pretended to sleep. At midnight he got up and fed the grass and leaves in his bags to the donkey and the yak. Then he took the rich neighbor’s tsamba and poured it into his bags. Next, he put his neighbor’s empty bags in the temple deity’s hands and put some tsamba in the deity’s mouth.

The next morning the rich man discovered he had no tsamba. He saw his empty bags in the deity’s hands. He was frightened.

Dongzhi said, “Maybe the temple god was hungry and ate your tsamba. Just look at his mouth.”

The rich man sadly said, “Now I can’t go to Lhasa. I will return home. Please go to Lhasa by yourself.”

“I think I will also return home, I don’t want to go to Lhasa by myself,” Dongzhi said.

Exercises

1. Answer the following questions.
   a) Did the rich neighbor share his tsamba ______________________________________
   b) Dongzhi’s neighbor gave him tsamba? Why? ________________________________
   c) Why was Dongzhi burning wood? _________________________________________
   d) What did the rich man load his yak with? _________________________________
   e) What did Dongzhi load his yak with? _____________________________________
   f) Where did the two men seek refuge? ______________________________________
   g) At midnight what did Dongzhi do? _______________________________________
   h) What did the rich man discover? ________________________________________
   i) Did Dongzhi and his rich neighbor go to Tibet? Why or why not? _______________
   j) Who was clever? Why? _________________________________________________
Lesson Twenty-Eight

第二十八课

New Words

- exciting /ɪkˈsaːtɪŋ/ a. 令人兴奋的
- receive /riˈsiːv/ vt. 受到,接受,收到
- certainly /ˈsəːtnli/ ad. 当然,无疑
- spring /sprɪŋ/ n. 泉
- soon /suːn/ ad. 不久,即可
- valid /ˈvælɪd/ a. 有法律效力的,有效的
- finish /ˈfɪnɪʃ/ vt. 完成,结束
- wash /wɒʃ/ v. & n. 洗
- permission /pɜːˈmɪʃn/ n. 许可,同意
- Italy /ˈɪtəli/ n. 意大利
- passport /ˈpɑːspɔːt/ n. 护照,通行证
- firm /fɜːm/ n. 公司
- whole /həʊl/ n. 全体,全部,所有的
- fill (in) /fɪl/ vt. 填写
- form /fɔːrm/ vt. 表格
- abroad /əˈbrəʊd/ ad. 到国外,在海外
- so /səʊ/ a. 所以,因而
- find /faɪnd/ vt. 找到,发现
- minute /ˈmɪnɪt/ n. 分,分钟
- later /ˈleɪtə/ adj. 更后的,后面的
- another /əˈnʌðə/ a. & pron. 另外的,又一
- noodles (a bowl of noodles) /ˈnuːdls/ n. 面条（一碗面条）

Text

An Exciting Trip

I’ve just received a letter from my brother, Tim. He is in Australia. He has been there for six months.

Tim is an engineer. He is working for a big firm and he has already visited a great number of different places in Australia. He has just bought an Australian car and has gone to Alice Springs, a small town in the center of Australia. He will soon visit Darwin. From there, he will drive to Perth.

My brother has never been abroad before, so he is finding this trip very exciting.

Conversation

A. Can I help you?
B. Yes, we’d like permission to stay in Italy for another month.
A. May I see your passport please?
B. Certainly.
A. You’ve been here for nearly three months.
B. That’s right.
A. What are you doing in Italy?
B. We’ve come to Italy to see as much as we can.
A. Have you been in Rome the whole time?
B. No, we have been to several Italian cities.
A. How do you like our country?
B. We love it. All these beautiful cities.

A. Fill in this form please and your visa will be valid for another month.

A. है क्या कुछ करें?
B. हाँ, हम इटली में एक अधिक महीने के लिए कार्यकर्ता हैं।
A. मैं आपके पास कार्य करने की विशेषता नहीं देख पाता?
B. हां, हम इटली में एक अधिक महीने के लिए कार्यकर्ता हैं।
A. है क्या आप इटली में क्या करते?
B. हम इटली में एक अधिक महीने के लिए कार्यकर्ता हैं।
A. है क्या आप इटली में क्या करते?
B. हम इटली में एक अधिक महीने के लिए कार्यकर्ता हैं।
A. आप इटली में कैसे पहुंचे?
B. हम इटली में एक अधिक महीने के लिए कार्यकर्ता हैं।
Drills

(A)

—Have you got my letter?   a) finish your work, an hour ago
—Yes, I have.      b) have your examinations, last week
—When did you get it?    c) wash your clothes, this morning
—The day before yesterday.  d) make your plan for the work, a couple of day ago

(B)

—Has Julia been here?    a) Sally, go back home, last Saturday, in February
—Yes, she has.          b) Mr. Johnson, answer your letter, a few days ago
—When was she here?    c) Miss Black, arrive, twenty minutes ago
—A moment ago.          d) Philip, call you up, a moment ago

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) What has just happened? (The writer of the text has just received a letter.)
   2) Who wrote him the letter? ______________________________________________
   3) Where is Tim now? _____________________________________________________
   4) How long has he been there? ____________________________________________
   5) What does Tim do? ___________________________________________________
   6) Who’s he working for? _________________________________________________
   7) Has he visited many places in Australia? _________________________________
   8) How is he traveling? __________________________________________________
   9) Has he just bought the car? ____________________________________________
  10) Where has he gone now? ______________________________________________
  11) Is it a big city? ______________________________________________________
  12) Where is it? _________________________________________________________
  13) Which city is he going to visit soon? ____________________________________
  14) Where’s he going from there? __________________________________________
  15) Is this his first time abroad? __________________________________________
  16) How is he finding the trip? ____________________________________________
4. Do the drills.
5. Answer the questions after the example:

Example A: Why don’t you go and see the film? (I’ve already seen it.)
1) Why don’t you read the paper? ____________________________
2) Why don’t you write (a letter) to your aunt? _______________________
3) Why don’t you wash your clothes? ________________________________
4) Why don’t you buy a nice radio? _________________________________
5) Why don’t you have a cup of tea? ________________________________
6) Why don’t you tell them some stories? ____________________________

Example B: Has he read the paper? (No, not yet. He’s going to read it later.)
1) Has Alice done her homework? _________________________________
2) Has father answered your uncle’s letter? _________________________
3) Has mother put the clothes in the wardrobe? ______________________
4) Have the girls cleaned their bedroom? ____________________________
5) Have the Coopers moved into their new house? ____________________
6) Have you filled in the forms? _________________________________

6. Answer these questions:
1) How long have you been in this city? I’ve been here for two years.
2) Have you done much sightseeing? ________________________________
3) What places have you been to? _________________________________
4) Have you visited many cities in the country? ______________________
5) Which cities, for example, have you visited? ______________________
6) Haven’t you visited Xining? _________________________________
7) When were you there? _________________________________
8) Did you visit Kumbum? _________________________________
9) How did you like the city? _________________________________
10) Have you ever been abroad? _________________________________
11) Would you like to visit some foreign countries? ____________________
12) Which countries, for example, would you like to visit? ______________
13) Which cities do you want to visit? _________________________________
14) You’d like to make a trip round the world, wouldn’t you? ______________
7. Do the crossword puzzle.

Across
1. I want to study English a ______.
2. I’m still hungry. Can I have a _____ bowl of noodles?
4. I need a p______ to visit another country.
6. Please f_____ my cup with milk tea.
7. I lost my money. Please help me f_____ it.
8. My brother works for a f______.
10. How much money did you r_____ from your family yesterday?
13. My teacher told me I was a good student s__ I was happy.
14. I will call you l_____.
15. Did you eat the w_____ chicken by yourself?
16. S_____ is after winter.
17. People speak Italian in I______.

Down
2. I’m still hungry. Can I have a_____ bowl of noodles?
3. I have a v_____ passport.
4. My teacher gave me p_______ to come to class late.
5. I want to go home s______.
7. My brother works for a f______.
8. After we f______ class I will eat lunch.
9. There are sixty m____ in one hour.
11. I c____ am Tibetan and I c_____ speak Tibetan.
12. It is e________ to ride a horse.
15. Every morning I w____ my face.

8. Compare the vowel sounds.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/əu/</th>
<th>/ɑ:/</th>
<th>/ɔ/</th>
<th>/ɔ:/</th>
<th>/ɔ/</th>
<th>/ʌ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nau</td>
<td>na:</td>
<td>fɔ:t</td>
<td>fɔ:t</td>
<td>bɔ:d</td>
<td>bɔd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sɔt</td>
<td>sɔ:</td>
<td>dɔ:</td>
<td>dɔ:</td>
<td>hɔ:t</td>
<td>hɔt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fɔt</td>
<td>fɔ:t</td>
<td>kɔ:1</td>
<td>kok</td>
<td>kɔ:s</td>
<td>kɔp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kəut</td>
<td>kɔ:t</td>
<td>bɔ:1</td>
<td>bɔks</td>
<td>nɔ:s</td>
<td>nɔt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
Trevor Portman is only two years older than Ted. He is 24. He’s got a degree in Engineering, and he works in the same factory as Ted (same factory, same hours of work, but in a different department).

Now here’s the difference: Trevor is married. He’s got a wife and small child — a girl called Sarah. He’s also got his own house — a small, modern house with two bedrooms, and a small garden.

Worries or problems? No. Like Ted, he’s very happy. But he hasn’t got very much money. Each month, when he has paid his taxes, his payments for the house, electricity, gas, water, food and clothes for all three, there isn’t much left. So — no car. He hasn’t got a car at present. But next year — perhaps.

Conversation
A. How much are the rooms, please?
B. One single room’s four pounds. Would you like a television in the room?
A. Yes, please. We’d like a telephone, too.
B. Every room’s got a telephone.
A. Have the rooms got a bathroom?
B. Yes, every room’s got a bathroom.
A. Have the bathrooms got showers?
B Yes, every bathroom’s got a shower
A. Good.

A. [Foreign language]
B. [Foreign language]
A. [Foreign language]
B. [Foreign language]
A. [Foreign language]
B. [Foreign language]
A. [Foreign language]

A. 请问这些房间房价多少?
B. 一个单人间是四英镑。你们需要电视吗?
A. 是的，我们还需要一部电话。
B. 每一间房子都有电话。
A. 这些房间里有浴室吗?
B. 是的，每一间里都有。
A. 浴室里有淋浴器吗?
B. 是的，每一间浴室都有。
A. 好的。

Drills
(A)

—Have you got any brothers or sisters?
—Yes, I have.
—How many brothers or sisters have you got?
—I’ve got one brother and two sisters.

a) foreign friends, more than ten
b) yaks, about twenty
c) CDs, nearly thirty
d) foreign students, more than fifty
—Have you got a song book?
—No, I haven’t.
—Who’s got one.
—Joseph has

a) a red pencil, Lily
b) a small radio, David
c) a car, my uncle
d) a Tibetan-English dictionary, our teacher.

Exercises
1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer these questions:
   1) Who’s older, Trevor or Ted?  Trevor is older.
   2) How much older is he? ______________________________________________________
   3) How old is Trevor? _________________________________________________________
   4) Has he got a degree? _______________________________________________________
   5) Where does he work? _______________________________________________________
   6) Does he work in the same factory as Ted? ______________________________________
   7) Do they work in the same department? _________________________________________
   8) Is Ted married? _____________________________________________________________
   9) What about Trevor? _________________________________________________________
  10) Has he got any children? ____________________________________________________
  11) Is it a boy or a girl? _________________________________________________________
  12) What’s she called? _________________________________________________________
  13) Has he got his own house? __________________________________________________
  14) What kind of house has he got? ______________________________________________
  15) How many bedrooms has it got? ______________________________________________
  16) Has it got a garden? _________________________________________________________
  17) Has he got worries or problems? _____________________________________________
  18) He’s very happy, isn’t he? __________________________________________________
  19) Is he very rich? _____________________________________________________________
  20) What does he have to pay each month? _______________________________________
21) He has to pay for food and clothes, too, doesn’t he? ______________________________

22) Does he have much money left after he has paid all this? _________________________

23) Has he got a car? __________________________________________________________

24) Will he get a car next year? ________________________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Turn these into interrogative and negative sentences:
   1) There is some milk in the glass. (Is there any milk in the glass? There isn’t any milk in the glass.)
   2) There is some bread in the basket. ___________________________________________
   3) Rose has got some butter. __________________________________________________
   4) We bought some fruit. ______________________________________________________
   5) She had some meat left. _____________________________________________________
   6) I need some paper. _________________________________________________________
   7) We’ll give them something to read. __________________________________________
   8) I have got something to say. ________________________________________________

6. Fill in the blanks with either much or many. (much 用于数量少, many 用于数量多)
   1) There isn’t _______ water in the cup.
   2) There aren’t _______ trees in the garden.
   3) I haven’t got _______ money left.
   4) We didn’t buy _______ milk.
   5) She didn’t ask me _______ questions.
   6) Did they give you _______ help?
   7) Is there _______ coffee left?
   8) Are there _______ flowers on the tree?
   9) Did they take _______ pictures?
   10) I haven’t got _______ hope of passing the exam.

7. Compare the vowel sounds:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/iː/</th>
<th>/ɪ/</th>
<th>/e/</th>
<th>/æ/</th>
<th>/æɪ/</th>
<th>/ei/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>biːt</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bet</td>
<td>bæk</td>
<td>balk</td>
<td>beik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siːt</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>sæk</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>seik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiːt</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hed</td>
<td>hæt</td>
<td>haid</td>
<td>heit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liːd</td>
<td>lid</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>læd</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>leit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Stolen Bicycle

Ted Robinson had been worried all last week. Last Tuesday, he received a letter from the local police. In the letter he was asked to call at the station. Ted wondered why he was wanted by the police. He went to the station yesterday and now he is not worried any more.

At the station he was told by a smiling policeman that his bicycle had been found. Five days ago, the policeman told him, the bicycle was picked up in a small village four hundred miles away. It is now being sent to his home by train.

Ted was most surprised when he heard the news. He was amused too, because he never expected the bicycle to be found. It was stolen twenty years ago, when Ted was a boy of fifteen!

Conversation

A. What are those new buildings over there?
B. They are all apartment houses. They’ve just been completed.
A. Do you plan to build more houses like those?
B. Sure. More than two hundred houses like these are to be put up next year.

A. 那边那些新楼房是什么?
B. 那些都是公寓, 完工每多久。
A. 你打算还建造那样的楼房吗?
B. 是的, 明年要建造两百多套像这样的公寓。

**Drills**

(A)
—What language is spoken in Germany?
—German is spoken there.
—Is German spoken in Spain?
—No, Spanish is spoken in Spain.

(B)
—Was the house completed last year?
—No, it wasn’t.
—When was it completed?
—It was completed the year before last.

**Exercises**

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) Who is the text about? It’s about Ted Robinson.
   2) What happened last week? ________________________________.
   3) What was he asked to do? ________________________________.
   4) How did he feel after it? ________________________________.
   5) Why was he worried? ________________________________.
   6) What did he do yesterday? ________________________________.
   7) What was he told there? ________________________________.
   8) When was the bicycle found? ________________________________.
   9) Where was it found? ________________________________.
10) What are the police doing with the bicycle? _____________________________.
11) How did Ted feel when he heard this? ________________________________.
12) Why did he feel like that? ________________________________________.
13) What happened to the bicycle many years ago? ________________________.
14) How old was Ted then? ____________________________________________.
15) How old is he now? ________________________________________________.
16) How many years have passed since then? ______________________________.
17) Is he worried still? _________________________________________________.

4. Do the drills.

5. Turn these into questions:

   1) The novel was written by Dongdebjeb (డంగేడొబ్బే). Who was the novel written by?
   2) Over ten thousand copies have been sold. ____________________________________.
   3) The TV-set was made in Japan. ____________________________________________.
   4) English is taught at this school. ________________________________________.
   5) The books are being sent there by plane. ________________________________.
   6) The story will be translated into English and French. ________________________.
   7) The house over there is going to be completed next month. ____________________.
   8) The work must be done well. ____________________________________________.

6. Put the following into the passive. Shankhala, kora, naniwadla, nibhane, shankhala, nihane

   1) They asked her a lot of questions. She was asked a lot of questions.
   2) We sang the song in Italian. ________________________________________.
   3) Everybody reads the book. ____________________________________________.
   4) They clean the room every day. ________________________________________.
   5) Have you washed the car? ____________________________________________.
   6) They have put up ten apartment houses this year. ________________________.
   7) They’re building a new road. ________________________________________.
   8) They’re examining the students. ________________________________________.
   9) We’ll send more people there. ________________________________________.
   10) We shall need them in our work. _____________________________________.
7. Put *steal, stole, stolen, stealing, steals* in the blanks below:

1) Today, I ________ some money.
2) Today, she ________ some money.  
3) Yesterday, I ________ some money.  
4) I will ________ some money tomorrow.  
5) Are you going to ________ some money tomorrow?  
6) I was ________ some money today.
7) You were ________ some money yesterday.
8) Some of my money was ________ yesterday.

8. Put *sends, send, sending, sent* in the blanks below.

1) Today, _____ some money to my mother.  
2) Today, she ________some money to me.  
3) Yesterday, ___some money to my father.  
4) I will ____some money tomorrow to you.  
5) Are you going to ____some money ______ tomorrow?  
6) I was ________ some money today.  
7) You were ______ some money yesterday.  
8) Some of my money was ____ yesterday.  
9) How many letters have you _____ to your friends this week __

9. Fill in the blanks below:

1) I don't live in an ________ in the city, I live in a ________.
2) I was very _________ and laughed and laughed.
3) I have an old ___ that I ride everywhere in my village. Do you know how to __ a new house?
4) I will ______ you tonight on the telephone.
5) ________ of our students are Tibetan.
6) I used to drink beer but ________ ________ ________.
7) My father is a ___________ and my mother is a policewoman.
8) When I ________ I feel happy.
9) I was very _______ when you said you were 60 years old because you look very young.
10) My mother is very ________about my younger brother because he doesn't like to study.

10. Compare the vowel sounds:

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
/\text{əu}/ & /\text{o}/ & /\text{au}/ & /\text{a}/ & /\text{ʌ}/ & /\text{u}/ & /\text{u}/ \\
\hline
\text{səu} & \text{so} & \text{sauə} & \text{so} & \text{ʌm} & \text{suːp} & \text{sut} \\
\hline
\text{kəut} & \text{kət} & \text{fau} & \text{kə:s} & \text{kəp} & \text{kə:l} & \text{kuk} \\
\hline
\text{ʃəu} & \text{ʃə:t} & \text{ʃaʊt} & \text{ʃə:t} & \text{ʃət} & \text{ʃuː} & \text{ʃud} \\
\hline
\text{bəut} & \text{bəːl} & \text{βau} & \text{bəːd} & \text{bət} & \text{buːt} & \text{but} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]
Lesson Thirty-One

New Words

western /westən/ a. 西方的
europe /juərəp/ n. 欧洲
Belgium /ˈbelɪgium/ n. 比利时
olive /ˈɒlv/ n. 橄榄
grow /ɡrəʊ/ vt. 生长
north /nɔːθ/ n. 北,北部
rainy /ˈreɪni/ a. 下雨的,多雨的
seldom /ˈseldəm/ ad. 很少,不常
hot /hɒt/ a. 热的
Mediterranean /ˌmedɪtəˈreməni/ adj. 地中海
orange /ˈɔrɪndʒ/ n. 橘子,橙子
lemon /ˈlemən/ n. 柠檬
Netherlands /ˈnɛdələndz/ n. 荷兰

crowded /ˈkraʊdɪd/ a. 拥挤的,塞满的
high /haɪ/ a. 高的
cover /ˈkʌvər/ vt. 覆盖
snow /ˈsnəʊ/ n. & v. 雪
mainly /ˈmeɪniəl/ adv. 主要地,大体上
German /ˈdʒərəmən/ a. & n. 德语
Latin /ˈlætɪn/ n. 拉丁语
dry /draɪ/ a. 干的,干燥的
consonant /ˈkɒnsənənt/ n. 辅音字母
living language /ˈlɪvɪŋ ˈlæŋɡwɪdʒ/ n. 应用语言,现用的语言
barley /ˈbælɪ/ n. 大麦,青稞

Text

Western Europe

Western Europe is the home of about 330 million people. Germany has the most people, but Belgium and the Netherlands are the most crowded because they are smaller.

In the North it is rainy all the year round, and the weather is seldom very hot or very cold. Spain and Italy are Mediterranean countries because they are on the Mediterranean Sea. Here, the weather is very hot and dry in summer and rainy in winter. Oranges, lemons and olives are grown on the hot, dry hills.

The highest mountain in Europe is Mount Blanc in the Alps and the Pyrenees are covered with snow.

The languages of the countries in the north come mainly from old German. The languages of the other countries come from Latin, which was spoken in Italy 2,000 years ago.

Conversation

A. I’d like to buy a recorder.
B. Is this one all right?
A. It’s a little too big. Have you got smaller ones?
B. Sorry. That’s the smallest we’ve got.
A. Then I’ll take this one. How much is it?
B. Seventy-three yuan. Please pay at the desk over there.
A. Thank you.

Drills

(A)

—Who’s younger, you or Lhamo?
—Lhamo is younger than me.
—Is she the youngest in the class?
—No, Jane’s the youngest (in the class).

a) Who, older, you or Peter, in the class, Joe
b) Who, taller, Rose or Mary, among the girls, Nancy
c) Which, bigger, your room or their room, in this building, Room 101
d) Which, more beautiful, this park or Beihai Park, in Beijing, the Summer Palace.

(B)

—Do you speak Tibetan as well as Helen?
—No, I don’t speak Tibetan as well as she does.
—So she speaks better than you?
—Right. She speaks Tibetan better than I do.

a) sing, well, Sarah
b) work, hard, David
c) swim, fast, Tim
d) play the piano, well, Betty
Exercises

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer these questions:
   2) Which country has the most people? ________________________________
   3) Which countries are the most crowded? ________________________________
   4) Why are they so crowded? ________________________________
   5) What’s the weather like in the north? ________________________________
   6) Does it rain very often there? ________________________________
   7) Where are Spain and Italy? ________________________________
   8) So they are called Mediterranean countries, aren’t they? ________________________________
   9) What’s the weather like in these two countries? ________________________________
  10) What fruits are grown there? ________________________________
  11) Which is the highest mountain in Europe? ________________________________
  12) Where is it? ________________________________
  13) Which mountains are covered with snow? ________________________________
  14) What languages are spoken in the countries in the north? ________________________________
  15) What about the languages of the other countries in this part of Europe? ________________________________
  16) Is Latin a living language? ________________________________

4. Do the drills.

5. Memorize these words.

   (A) 
good   better   best   
bad    worse    worst

   (B) 
big  bigger  biggest
hot  hotter  hottest

   (C) 
Interesting/more interesting/most interesting
important /more important / most important
6. Answer these questions:

(A)

1) Who is younger, you or your sister? My sister is younger.

2) How much older are you?_____________________________________________________

3) Who sings better, you or your sister?____________________________________________

4) Who works harder, you or your sister?__________________________________________

5) Who has studied English longer, you or your sister?_________________________________

6) Who has learned more English words?___________________________________________

7) Who speaks English better, you or your sister? ___________________________________

8) Who can read faster, you or your sister?_________________________________________

(B)

1) Which city is bigger, Nanjing or Hangzhou?_________________________________________

2) Is Nanjing as beautiful as Hangzhou?_____________________________________________

3) Which city is more crowded than Beijing?___________________________________________

4) Which city is more important, Beijing or Nanjing? Why do you think so?__________________

5) Which is the biggest city in China?_______________________________________________

6) Which is the most beautiful lake in China?_________________________________________

7) Which part of the country is hottest?_____________________________________________

8) Where do we find the best weather?______________________________________________

7. Look at the new words for Lesson 31. Write a new word in the blanks to make correct sentences.

1) The Tibet Autonomous Region is in the __________ part of China.

2) F_________ and B___________ are countries in w_____________ E_______________

3) An o_____ is a small green fruit that grows in Italy.

4) Does your family ____________ barley?

5) South is the opposite of ______________.

6) The opposite of sunny is ____________.

7) I __________ write a letter to my parents. I usually telephone them.

8) The opposite of cold is ____________.

9) Spain is near the ______________ Sea.

10) I don't like apples, I like ______________.

11) The __________ is a yellow fruit.

12) Holland is another name for the _____________________.

13) The bus was so ______________ that there was no place for me to sit.
14) The opposite of low is __________.
15) I usually __________ my head with a hat.
16) It is white and cold. It is ______________.
17) At home, I ___________ speak Tibetan.
18) In Germany, people speak __________.
19) _________ is an old language that people used to speak in Italy.
20) The opposite of wet is ________.

7. Review these consonants. 学习辅音字母。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/θ/</th>
<th>/ð/</th>
<th>/ʃ/</th>
<th>/s/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>θηακ</td>
<td>δζω</td>
<td>Σετ</td>
<td>τζε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θηκ</td>
<td>διζ</td>
<td>Σι</td>
<td>τζετ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θετ</td>
<td>δευζ</td>
<td>Σου</td>
<td>τζαινε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μλμθ</td>
<td>Μλδε</td>
<td>βραν</td>
<td>ωετ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/dз/</td>
<td>/tr/</td>
<td>/dr/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>дзειν</td>
<td>треин</td>
<td>драи</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>дзαστ</td>
<td>трав</td>
<td>дрεув</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>дзαм</td>
<td>τρι:</td>
<td>дрι:m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ειдз</td>
<td>Καντρι</td>
<td>дрεп</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson Thirty-Two (A)

New Words

businessman /'biznəsmən; 'biznəsmən/ n. 商人

island /'aɪlənd/ n. 岛,岛屿

ocean /'əʊʃn/ n. 大海,海洋

dangerous /'deɪndʒərəs/ a. 危险的

forget /'fəɡt/ vt. 忘记

lady /'leidi/ n. 女士

behind /'bɪhænd/ prep. 再…之后

counter /'kaʊntə/ n. 柜台

gentleman /'dʒentlmən/ n. 先生

relative pronouns 關係代詞

relative adverbs 關係副詞

Welsh /'welʃ/ adj. 威尔士的

Wales /'wɛlz/ n. 威尔士

photograph /'fətəgræf/ n. 照片, 相片

Text

A Taxi

Captain Ben Fawcett has bought an unusual taxi and has begun a new service. The “Taxi” is a small plane which can carry seven passengers. This wonderful plane can land anywhere.

Captain Fawcett’s first passenger was a doctor who flew from Birmingham to a small village in the Welsh mountains. Since then, Captain Fawcett has flown passengers to many unusual places.

Captain Fawcett has just refused a strange request from a businessman who wanted to fly to a small island in the Atlantic Ocean. Captain Fawcett did not take him because the trip was too dangerous.
Conversation
A. I bought two dictionaries here half an hour ago, but I forgot to take them with me.
B. Who served you, sir?
A. The lady who is standing behind the counter.
B. Did you serve this gentleman half an hour ago, Miss Roberts? He says he is the man who bought two books. Is this the man that you served?
C. Yes, sir. This is the man I served. Here are the books you left here.

Drills
(A)
—Is this the radio you bought?
—Yes, it is.
—It’s very good, isn’t it?
—The one Sally bought is even better.

a) the room, you took, big, the room Ms. Green took
b) the paper flowers, you made, pretty, the ones my sister made.
c) the pictures, you took in the park, nice, the ones Nancy took
d) the book, you are going to translate, difficult, the one Mary’s going to translate

(B)
—Do you know the American who spoke here yesterday?
—Yes, I do. He’s a friend of Peter’s.
—Who’s Peter?
—The man who taught here last year.

a) the girl, is standing at the door, Nora’s cousin, lives in Room 304
b) the young man, is speaking to the Director, Nancy’s brother, studies Tibetan History here
c) old man, is sitting behind David, Sarah’s uncle, worked with us last year.
d) woman, rang you up just now, Tom’s aunt, came to help us yesterday.
Exercises

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer the questions.
   1) What has Captain Fawcett done?
      (He has bought a taxi.)
   2) Is it a car?
   3) Is it a big plane or a small one?
   4) How many passengers can it carry?
   5) What’s wonderful about the plane?
   6) What has Captain Fawcett done with the plane?
   7) Who was his first passenger?
   8) Where did he go?
   9) Has Captain Fawcett had many passengers since then?
  10) Has he received a strange request?
  11) What was he asked to do?
  12) Did he do that?
  13) Why did he refuse?

4. Do the drills.

5. Join the sentences using relative pronouns or relative adverbs where necessary.
   1) The man wrote the song. The man is a worker. (The man who wrote the song is a worker.)
   2) A girl came to see me this morning. The girl lives on the next street.
   3) We bought a new TV set last week. Here it is.
   4) You want to see a gentleman. Is that the gentleman?
   5) Jane told a story. What did you think of it?
   6) He took a photograph. It was excellent.
   7) I know a man. His father works in the army.
   8) The doctor saved the boy’s life. This is the boy.
   9) She stayed in a hotel last summer. This is the hotel.
  10) Let’s sit over there. We can hear the speaker better there.
  11) We first met on that day. I always remember that day.
  12) We are talking about the old days. We were in college together.

6. Answer these questions:
   1) What’s the first English word you learnt? (The first English word I learnt was “I.”)
   2) What’s the first English song you learnt?
   3) Do you still remember the first English teacher who taught you?
   4) How did you like the lesson we had last week?
   5) What did you think of the film we saw last night?
   6) Is the story we are reading very interesting?
   7) Is there a shop around where we can buy fruit?
   8) Is this the place where you heard your first English talk?
   9) Do you still remember the days when you were a little boy (girl)?
  10) What kind of teacher do you like?
  11) What kind of people do you like?
  12) What kind of books do you like to read?
7. Fill in the blanks below:
   1) You can go ______ if you have an airplane.
   2) When did you __________ to study English?
   3) The opposite of "in front of" is __________.
   4) My uncle is a __________ and makes a lot of money.
   5) My older brother is an airplane __________ and flies an airplane.
   6) This is heavy. Please help me __________ it.
   7) The woman behind the __________ helped me buy a new pair of shoes.
   8) Riding a horse can be __________.
   9) I'm getting older and now I ________ a lot of students' names.
   10) The ________ on the bus offered his seat to a woman holding a baby.
   11) Hainan Province is an __________.
   12) The __________ offered her seat on the bus to the old gentleman.
   13) How much __________ does your family have for its yaks?
   14) The Atlantic and Pacific are __________.
   15) When he asked her to marry her, she said no. She did __________.
   16) He made a strange ________ --that she mix noodles with his zamba.
   17) The taxi __________ in Xining is very good.
   18) What a ________ person you are to wear a large heavy coat when it is hot in summer.
   19) I took a __________ to the museum because we were in a hurry.
   20) The opposite of usual is __________.
   21) It is a __________ idea to help poor people.

8. Read these words in transcription.

   (A) 
   | /bæk/ | /faːst/ | /θəːd/ | /hɔt/ |
   | /ʃɔt/ | /sʌŋ/ | /ʤiːp/ | /θɪŋk/ |
   | /'fæθ/ | /ðəm/ | /ʧuːz/ | /tauə/ |
   | /kwæt/ | /sɔːt/ | /treɪ/ | /dreɪv/ |

   (B) 
   | /'ziərəʊ/| /'teknikəl/| /'laɪbrərɪ/| /'pækɪdʒ/ |
   | /'əraʊnd/| /bɪ'heɪnd/| /dɪ'saɪd/| /kəm'bain/ |
   | /ɪn'deffaɪn/| /ɪn'tenʃən/| /'rɛvəluːʃən/| /'ə'bɪlɪtɪ/ |
   | /tek'nklədʒi/| /'meʒərbl/| /'bjuərə'ziə/| /'miːrəz/ |
Lesson Thirty-Two (B)

A

king has charged local people a butter tax. If they have not paid the butter tax, he severely punishes them. For this reason the local people do not like the King.

Uncle Dunba is very poor. He does not have much property. One day Uncle Dunba goes near the King’s home and begins beating his son. When the King sees this he asks Uncle Dunba, “Why are you beating your son?”

Uncle Dunba sadly replies, “My son has killed my donkey. Now I can’t pay you your butter tax.”

The King is speechless for a moment and then replies, “You pay your tax with donkey butter?”

“That’s right,” says Uncle Dunba.

The King takes Uncle Dunba to his storeroom and asks, “Do you know which butter is the donkey butter?”

“Yes,” replies Uncle Dunba.

The King says, “I do not eat donkey butter. Please take your donkey butter out of my storeroom.”

Uncle Dunba chooses the best butter and happily returns to his home.

The king has now stopped charging local people a butter tax.

Excercises

1. Answer the following questions.
   a. Who didn’t own much property?
   b. Who were severely punished?
   c. Why was the King not liked?
   d. Why did Uncle Dinba beat his son?
   e. How did Uncle Dinba trick the King?
   f. What lesson does this story teach?
Lesson Thirty-Three

New Words

horse race  赛马
picnic  野餐
to hold (a festival)  举行
by all means  尽一切办法
rifle  步枪
woven  编织的
skill  技能,本领
memorize  记住,记忆
to perform  表演,演出
passive voice  被动式
ridden at full gallop  最大步幅
good chance to experience  得(获)经验的好机会
target  目标
traditional  传统的
performed  表演,演出

yogurt  酸奶
invite  邀请
decorated  装饰的
founded  发现,感到
nomadic  游牧的
area  地区,区域
located  位于,坐落于
lecture  演讲
attended  参加,出席
sheepskin  羊皮
mutton  羊肉
tent  帐篷
sheep  羊

Text

Tibetan Horse Races

Have you ever heard of the horse races in Kham? The largest ones are held in Yushu and Litang, although many smaller ones are held in other areas. Tibetan men ride their horses wearing traditional clothes. The horses are ridden at full gallop across the grassland. The riders use things such as rifles and khatag to test their riding skills. Rifles are shot at small paper targets, while in another event several khatag are put on the ground in a row and picked up by the riders.

Of course, Tibetans sing and dance a lot at the horse race festivals. Songs are sung in both Tibetan and Chinese. Dances are performed by men and women together.

These festivals are also a good chance to experience Tibetan food. Families and friends have picnics and eat lots of meat, yogurt, bread and noodles. Although this food is often eaten at other
times as well, Tibetans may invite you to sit down and eat with them. If you are invited to do so, by all means join them…it’s part of the fun!

**Conversation**

A: What’s this called? I’ve never seen one before.
B: It’s called a “khata.”
A: What are they made of?
B: They are usually made of white silk but there are also blue and yellow ones.
A: What are they used for?
B: They are used for greeting people. When we meet special people, khata are put around their necks.
A: Oh… so they’re for special people. Now I know why I’ve never seen one before!

---

**Drills**

(A)

___ Have you ever been to a Tibetan festival?
   ___ Yes, I have. It was held near Lhasa.
___ Were the songs sung well?
   ___ Yes, of course.

a) a Tibetan dance, performed, people, dressed
b) the Potala Palace, built, rooms, decorated
c) a Tibetan monastery, founded, walls, painted
d) a nomadic area, located, tents, woven
Was the homework done on time?
No, it wasn’t.
When was it done?
It was done yesterday.

a) lecture, given, at half past eight
b) meeting, held, last night
c) class, started, at a quarter past nine
d) shop, shut, at eleven o’clock

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text and memorize it.
3. Circle the passive voice forms in the text.
4. Answer these questions.
   1) What is the text about? It's about a Tibetan horse race.
   2) Have you ever seen a horse race festival?
   3) Where are the largest ones held in Kham?
   4) Tibetan men ride their sheep, don’t they?
   5) What do they wear?
   6) Are the horses ridden at full gallop?
   7) What things do the riders use to test their skills?
   8) Rifles are used to shoot at targets, aren’t they?
   9) Where are khatag spread?
   10) Who picks up the khatag?
   11) Do Tibetans sing and dance a little or a lot?
   12) How are the songs sung?
   13) Whom are the dances performed by?
   14) What else can one experience at these festivals?
   15) What kind of Tibetan food is eaten?
   16) Do Tibetans often invite others to eat with them?
   17) If you are invited to join them, what should you do?

5. Do the drills.
6. Turn these into special (“wh~”) questions.
   1) The festivals are held around Kham. Where are the festivals held?
   2) The festivals are held in early summer.
   3) They are attended by thousands of people.
   4) Horses are ridden by Tibetans.
   5) Both rifles and khataq are used during the festival.
   6) They are used for testing the rider’s skills.
   7) Tibetan dancers are dressed beautifully.
   8) Tibetan clothes are made of yak hair and sheepskin.

7. Change the following sentences into the passive voice.
   1) He does his homework in the evening. (His homework is done in the evening.)
   2) She milks the yaks near the tent.
   3) Tibetans often eat mutton.
   4) Nomads make tents with yak hair.
   5) A wolf killed the sheep.
   6) He gave us some meat.
   7) Farmers will plant barley in the spring.
   8) Students should study Tibetan hard.
   9) They are eating zamba now.
### New Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>herdsman /ˈhaːdzmən/</td>
<td>n. 牧人</td>
<td>牧人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>livestock /ˈlɑːrvstək/</td>
<td>n. 家畜, 牲畜</td>
<td>家畜, 牲畜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yak /ˈjæk/</td>
<td>n. 牦牛</td>
<td>牦牛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goat /ˈgɔːt/</td>
<td>n. 山羊</td>
<td>山羊</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheep /ʃiːp/</td>
<td>n. 羊</td>
<td>羊</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheese /ˈtʃiːz/</td>
<td>n. 奶酪, 干酪, 乳酪</td>
<td>奶酪, 干酪, 乳酪</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cream /ˈkriːm/</td>
<td>n. 乳脂</td>
<td>乳脂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yogurt /ˈjʊəgət/</td>
<td>n. 酸奶</td>
<td>酸奶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracefully /ˈɡreɪsflɪ/</td>
<td>adv. 优美地</td>
<td>优美地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butter tea /ˈbʌtər tiː/</td>
<td>酥油茶</td>
<td>酥油茶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>festival /ˈfɛstɪvl/</td>
<td>n. 节日</td>
<td>节日</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worship /ˈwɔːrʃɪp/</td>
<td>adj. 拜神, 敬神</td>
<td>拜神, 敬神</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local /ˈləʊkl/</td>
<td>adj. 地方的, 乡土的</td>
<td>地方的, 乡土的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain god /ˈmæntən ɡɔd/</td>
<td>土地神, 山神</td>
<td>土地神, 山神</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horse race /ˈhɔːr rɛs/</td>
<td>赛马</td>
<td>赛马</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>archery contest /ˈɑrkiɹ kənˈtest/</td>
<td>箭术赛</td>
<td>箭术赛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrestling match /ˈwrestlɪŋ ˈmætʃ/</td>
<td>摔跤比赛</td>
<td>摔跤比赛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grassland /ˈɡrɑːsˌlænd/</td>
<td>n. 草原</td>
<td>草原</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graze /ɡreɪz/</td>
<td>vi. (ˈɡreɪz)</td>
<td>放牧</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutton /ˈmʌtn/</td>
<td>n. 羊肉</td>
<td>羊肉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>particularly /pəˈtrɪkəli/</td>
<td>adv. 特别地, 显著地</td>
<td>特别地, 显著地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long-sleeved /ˈlɒŋˌslɛvd/</td>
<td>长袖的</td>
<td>长袖的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tibetan robe /ˈtʃiːnəb ˈroʊb/</td>
<td>藏式长袍</td>
<td>藏式长袍</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take the animals out /ˈteɪk ðə ənaləmz aʊt/</td>
<td>在外放牧</td>
<td>在外放牧</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>held a festival /hɛld ə ˈfɛstɪvl/</td>
<td>举行节日</td>
<td>举行节日</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stamp the ground /stæmp ðə greʊnd/</td>
<td>跺(脚),</td>
<td>跺(脚),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leather boots /ˈliːðər buːts/</td>
<td>皮靴</td>
<td>皮靴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot of a mountain /ˈfʊt əv aˈmʌntən/</td>
<td>山脚</td>
<td>山脚</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>female (female yaks) /ˈfɛməl/</td>
<td>(雌)</td>
<td>雌的, (雌牦牛)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roasted barley mixed with butter, cheese, tea and a little sugar (zamba) /ˈrɔstid ˈbærli ˈmɪksɪd ɪv ˈbʌtər ˈtʃiːz ˈtiː əˈlɪt ˈʃʊɡər/</td>
<td>糌粑</td>
<td>糌粑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleepy /ˈslɪpi/</td>
<td>adj. 想睡的,</td>
<td>想睡的,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>睡眠的</td>
<td>睡眠的</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Text

Zhaxi Takes a Friend Home

Last summer, Zhaxi, an English student at Beijing University, took John, his American friend, to his home in north Tibet.

Zhaxi’s parents are herdsmen and they live in a tent. They move two times each year. In winter, they live at the foot of a mountain and in summer, they live in the mountains.

They have a large number of livestock: 37 yaks and cows, 55 goats, 77 sheep and 20 horses. They milk the female yaks, cows and goats. Zhaxi’s mother makes butter, cheese, cream, and yogurt from the milk. Everyday, Zhaxi’s father takes the animals out to the grassland to graze.

John enjoyed Tibetan food. He ate roasted barley mixed with butter, cheese, tea and a little sugar and drank butter tea. He also liked the boiled mutton and yak meat.

During John’s visit, local Tibetans held a festival. Many Tibetans met near a mountain to worship the local Mountain God. There were horse races, archery contests, wrestling matches, and much dancing. John found the dancing particularly interesting. Several hundred Tibetan men and women danced wearing their long-sleeved Tibetan robes. The men stamped the ground with their leather boots while the women gracefully waved their long white sleeves.

John enjoyed himself and hopes to visit Zhaxi’s family again.

Conversation

Zhaxi: John, would you like to visit my home in north Tibet this summer?
John: Yes, very much. What are your parents' jobs?
Zhaxi: They are herdsmen. They live in tents.
John: Where do they live during the year?
Zhaxi: They move two times each year. In winter, they live at the foot of a mountain. In summer, they move to the mountains.
John: Does your family have much livestock?
Zhaxi: Yes, we do. We have yaks, cows, goats, sheep, and horses. Altogether, we have more than 100 animals.
John: What kind of food does your family eat?
Zhaxi: In summer, we eat butter, cheese, cream and yogurt. And in every season we eat meat.
John: It sounds very interesting! When do we leave?
Zhaxi: As soon as you are ready!
扎西：约翰，今年暑假你想去西藏北部我的家参观吗？
约翰：是的，我很想去，你父母是干什么的？
扎西：他们是牧民，他们住在帐篷。
约翰：他们整年呆在哪里啊？
扎西：他们每年要搬迁两次。冬天他们住在山脚下，夏天搬到山里去。
约翰：你家有很多家禽吗？
扎西：是的。我们有牦牛、奶牛、山羊、绵羊，还有马，总共有一百多。
约翰：你们家平时吃什么样的食物？
扎西：夏天，我们吃酥油、奶酪、奶油和酸奶，而且一年四季都吃肉。
约翰：听起来非常有趣，我们时候走啊？
扎西：等你准备好了马上启程。
4) Zhaxi’s family lives at the foot of a mountain in winter. ______________________________
5) Zhaxi’s family lives in the mountain in summer. ______________________________
6) Zhaxi’s family has 37 yaks and cows, 55 goats, 77 sheep and 20 horses. ______________________________
7) John ate roasted barley mixed with butter, cheese, tea and a little sugar, boiled mutton and yak meat. ______________________________
8) John drank butter tea. ______________________________
9) Local Tibetans held a mountain god festival during John’s visit to Zhaxi’s home. ______________________________
10) John enjoyed his visit and hopes to visit Zhaxi’s family again. ______________________________

4. Answer the questions below:
1) Who is John? ______________________________
2) Where is John from? ______________________________
3) Who is Zhaxi? ______________________________
4) Where does Zhaxi study? ______________________________
5) Where is Zhaxi’s home? ______________________________
6) What is Zhaxi's parents' job? ______________________________
7) Where does Zhaxi's family live? ______________________________
8) Who live in a tent? ______________________________
9) How many times a year do they move? ______________________________
10) Where do they live in summer? ______________________________
11) Where do they live in winter? ______________________________
12) When do they live in the mountains? ______________________________
13) What livestock do they have? ______________________________
14) What does Zhaxi's mother make? ______________________________
15) What did John enjoy? ______________________________
16) What is zamba? ______________________________
17) What did John eat? ______________________________
18) What did John drink? ______________________________
19) Who held a local festival? ______________________________
20) Where did many Tibetans meet? _____________________________________________

21) What did John find particularly interesting? ___________________________________

22) Who stamped the ground? ___________________________________________________

23) What did the women wave? _________________________________________________

24) What does John hope? ______________________________________________________

5. Fill in the blanks below with new words from this lesson.
   1) I won the ________________ during Losar in my village.
   2) I like to drink ______________ when I eat bread for breakfast.
   3) I put dried ______________ in my zamba.
   4) I like to eat the ______________ on top of milk.
   5) Losar is an important Tibetan ______________.
   6) It looks like a sheep. It is a ______________.
   7) She dances very ______________.
   8) How many yaks and sheep can you see on the ______________?
   9) The sheep and yaks do ______________ on the grassland.
   10) My family members are all ______________. We have many yaks and sheep.
   11) My little brother won the ______________ on our family's fast horse.
   12) Sheep, cows, yaks, and horses are all ______________.
   13) I'm not from this place so I don't know any of the ______________ people.
   14) My Tibetan robe is ______________.
   15) People in my home place worship the local ______________ ______________.
   16) Cooked sheep meat is ______________.
   17) I like meat, ______________ mutton.
   18) Mutton is cooked ______________ meat.
   19) My family has a big black yak hair ______________ that we use in summer.
   20) I always wear a ______________ ______________ when I am herding.
   21) People in my home place ______________ the local mountain god.
   22) Boys and young men like to join the ______________ ______________ during the summer festival.
   23) It is an important animal for Tibetans because it gives us milk, hair, and meat. It carries things.
       It is very big. It is the ______________.
   24) It is made from milk. You may feel sleepy if you eat it. It is white. It is ______________
Lesson Thirty-Five

New Words

temple /ˈtempl/ n. 寺, 神殿
New Year’s Holiday 新年假期
Kumbum 塔尔寺
Yellow Sect of Tibetan Buddhism 格鲁派, 黄教
Tsongkhapa 宗喀巴
founder /ˈfaʊndə/ n. 创始人
reform movement 改革
spinning 转经筒
burning conifer needles 烧柏枝(刺柏)
chanting /ˈtʃæntɪŋ/ v. 诵经
impression /ɪmˈprɛʃn/ n. 印象
Lama /ˈlɑːmə/ n. 喇嘛
pilgrim /ˈpɪlgrɪm/ n. 朝圣者
do prostrations 叩长头
eager /iːɡə/ adj. 渴望的

significance /ˈsɪgnɪfɪkəns/ n. 意义, 含义
Buddha image 佛像
deity /ˈdeɪti/ n. 神
butter sculpture 酥油花
atmosphere /ætˈməʊrɪə/ n. 气氛, 气候
remain /rɪˈmɛn/ vi. 遗留
publishing house 出版社
scripture /ˈskrɪptʃə/ vt. & vi. 经典, 佛经
wood-block 木板的
coated /ˈkəʊtɪd/ adj. 涂上一层的
religion /rɪˈlɪndʒən/ n. 宗教
over the New Year Holiday 新年假期
famous /ˈfeɪməs/ adj. 著名的
explain /ɪkˈsplən/ vt. ถานิยสจิตร์ อนิยสจิตร์
解释, 阐明
various /ˈveəriəs/ adj. ที่มีการเปลี่ยนแปลงของ
各种各样的
especially /ɪˈspeʃəli/ adv. เฉพาะ, ยิ่ง
特别,尤其
carved by hand ที่ได้แก่น่า ทำงาน
手工雕刻
coated with ink ที่มีการเปลี่ยนแปลงของ
t’intน้ำ
涂墨水
valuable collection ที่มีการเปลี่ยนแปลงของ
珍贵收藏

Text
Liz Visits a Tibetan Temple

Lhamo, an English student at a college in Qinghai, took Liz, her English friend, to her home over the New Year holiday. Lhamo lives near Kumbum, a famous temple of the Yellow Sect of Tibetan Buddhism. Tsongkhapa, the founder of the Yellow Sect, was born here in 1357 and began a reform movement in Buddhism.

Liz was eager to see the temple which they visited together. Lhamo explained the significance of the various Buddha images and other deity images. Liz was impressed with the beauty of the images and found the butter sculptures especially interesting. She also found the atmosphere of the temple very special. The spinning prayer wheels, smell of burning conifer needles, sound of chanting, and ringing bells made an impression she will not soon forget.

They also saw many Lamas and pilgrims at the temple. Pilgrims had come from Tibetan areas in Gansu, Sichuan, Yunnan, Qinghai, and from Tibet. Many pilgrims were doing prostrations before the temple building where some remains of Tsongkhapa are kept.

Liz and Lhamo also visited the publishing house of the temple. Here, scriptures are printed by hand from wood-blocks. Blocks of wood are carved by hand, coated with ink and then the scriptures are printed. The temple has a very valuable collection of many scriptures. Liz left the temple feeling that she had seen a very interesting example of Tibetan culture. She decided to learn more about Tibetan history and religion so that the next time she visited the temple, she would understand more.

Conversation

Lhamo: Liz, would you like to visit my home this New Year holiday? I live near Kumbum. We could visit it together if you like. Have you ever visited a Tibetan temple before?
Liz: Oh, Lhamo! I would love to visit your home. I’ve always wanted to visit a Tibetan temple but I’ve never had the chance.
Lhamo: Do you know why Kumbum is important?
Liz: I really don’t know much about Tibetan religion and culture, Lhamo. Why is Kumbum important?

Lhamo: Tsongkhapa, the founder of the Yellow Sect of Tibetan Buddhism, was born in 1357 at the present temple site. Kumbum is one of the largest Tibetan temples in China. Pilgrims from many Tibetan areas come there to worship.

Liz: It sounds very interesting. Thank you so much for the invitation.

Drills (A)
—Who did Lhamo take home over the New Year holiday?
—She took Liz, her English friend, to her home.

a) National Day holiday, …Beth, …American friend
b) Labor Day holiday, …Louise, …French friend
—What about the temple did she find interesting?
—She found the spinning prayer wheels and smell of burning conifer needles interesting.

a) sound of the chanting and ringing bells
b) butter sculptures and many pilgrims

—What did Liz decide to learn more about?
—She decided to learn more about Tibetan history.

a) Tibetan religion and culture
b) Tibetan life

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Answer these questions:
   1) Where does Lhamo live? (In Qinghai, near Kumbum.)
   2) Who did Lhamo take to her home? ____________________________
   3) What is Kumbum? __________________________________________
   4) What was Liz eager to see? __________________________________
   5) What did Liz and Lhamo visit together? _______________________
   6) What impressed Liz? _________________________________________
   7) What did she find particularly interesting? _____________________
   8) What made an impression she will not soon forget? ______________
   9) Where had pilgrims come from? _______________________________
  10) What were many pilgrims doing? ______________________________
  11) Where were the pilgrims doing prostrations? ___________________
  12) What are printed by hand from wood-blocks? __________________
  13) How are the scriptures printed? ________________________________
  15) Where does Lhamo study? ___________________________________
  16) What does Lhamo study? _____________________________________
  17) Who is Lhamo? _____________________________________________
  18) Who is Liz? ________________________________________________
  19) Where is Liz from? _________________________________________
20) Who went to Lhamo's home? ____________________________________________

21) When did Liz go to Lhamo's home? ______________________________________

22) Where does Lhamo live? ________________________________________________

23) What is near Lhamo's home? __________________________________________

24) What is a famous temple of the Yellow Sect of Tibetan Buddhism? __________

25) Who is the founder of the Yellow Sect of Tibetan Buddhism? ________________

26) Who was born in 1357? _________________________________________________

27) Why is Tsongkhapa important? __________________________________________

28) What did Tsongkhapa begin? ____________________________________________

29) Who began a reform movement in Buddhism? ______________________________

30) What was Liz eager to see? _____________________________________________

31) Who visited the temple together? _________________________________________

32) What did Liz explain? ___________________________________________________

33) What was Liz impressed with? __________________________________________

34) What did Liz find especially interesting? _________________________________

35) What did Liz find very special? _________________________________________

36) What made an impression Liz will not soon forget? _________________________

37) What are pilgrims? _____________________________________________________

38) Who did they see at the temple? _________________________________________

39) Where had the pilgrims come from? ______________________________________

40) What were many pilgrims doing before one temple building? ________________

41) What is done in the temple publishing room? ______________________________

42) How are wood-block used? _____________________________________________

43) How are scriptures printed? _____________________________________________

44) What are carved by hand? _____________________________________________

45) What are coated with ink? _____________________________________________

46) The temple has a very valuable collection of what? _________________________

47) How did Liz feel when she left the temple? _________________________________

48) What did Liz decide to do? _____________________________________________

49) Why did Liz want to learn more about Tibetan history and culture? ________

____________________ ______________________
Lesson Thirty-Six

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Words</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>king</td>
<td>/kɪŋ/</td>
<td>n. ]string</td>
<td>国王,君主</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Songtsen Gampo</td>
<td>/ˈsoʊŋtsən ˈɡɑmpoʊ/</td>
<td>n.</td>
<td>松赞干布</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palace of Unchanging Compassion</td>
<td>/ˈpæləs οvʌn ˈʃeɪndʒɪŋ ˈkɒmpəsin/</td>
<td></td>
<td>永久慈悲宫</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AD (Anno Domini)</td>
<td>/ˈeɪdən doʊˈmiːni/</td>
<td>n.</td>
<td>公元</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reign</td>
<td>/rɪˈgn/</td>
<td>n.</td>
<td>统治</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accomplished</td>
<td>/əˈkʌmplɪʃt/</td>
<td>vt.</td>
<td>完成,实现</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alphabet</td>
<td>/ˈælɪfabet/</td>
<td>n.</td>
<td>字母</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seclusion</td>
<td>/sɪˈkluːʒn/</td>
<td>n.</td>
<td>隐居,僻静</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>religious and political commentaries</td>
<td>/ˌriːliʒɪəs ənd ˈpɒlɪtɪkəl ˈkɒmentəriz/</td>
<td></td>
<td>关于政教的解说词(书)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cause of peace</td>
<td>/ˈkɔːs əv ˈpiːs/</td>
<td></td>
<td>为和平而…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>administrative districts</td>
<td>/ədəˈmɪnɪstrətɪv ˈdɪstrɪkts/</td>
<td></td>
<td>地方行政区(松赞干布时期)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>translation</td>
<td>/trænzˈleɪʃn/</td>
<td>n.</td>
<td>翻译</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhist works</td>
<td>/ˈbjuːdɪst wɜːks/</td>
<td></td>
<td>佛学经典</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thonmi Sambhota</td>
<td>/ˈθoʊmni ˈsæmbhoʊtə/</td>
<td></td>
<td>同弥散布扎</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| | | | |
| ministers | /ˈmɪnɪstə(r)s/ | n. | 大臣 |
| India | /ˈɪndɪə/ | n. | 印度 |
| Tang Dynasty | /ˈtæŋ ˈdeɪstɪ/ | | 唐朝 |
| Nepal | /ˈnɛpl/ | n. | 尼泊尔 |
| great accomplishment | /ˈɡreɪt əˈkʌmplɪʃmənt/ | | 伟大的成就 |
| choose (chose) | /tʃuːz/ | v. | 选择 |
| magnificent | /ˈmæɡnɪfɪk/ | adj. | 宏伟的,华丽的 |
| architecture | /ˌɑːkɪˈtektʃər/ | n. | 建筑(学) |
| encourage | /ɪnˈkɜːrɪdʒ/ | v. | 鼓励 |
| throughout | /θəˈrɔːt/ | adv, prep | 到处,始终 |
| official | /ˈɒfɪʃl/ | n. | 官员,公务员 |
| historical material | /ˈhɪstərɪkl ˈmæterɪəl/ | | 历史资料,历史材料 |
| folktale | /ˈfəʊlkteɪl/ | n. | 民间故事 |
King Song-tsen Gampo--Tibetan King

Song-tsen Gampo was born in the palace of Unchanging Compassion in 617 AD. His father was Anomyi Song-tsen and his mother was Tsebong Sadematolgar.

When he was thirteen he became king. During his reign, he accomplished several important things. At that time, Tibetans did not have a written language. King Song-tsen Gampo sent Thonmi Sambhota, one of his ministers, to India. There, he studied different languages. He chose a very good alphabet for the Tibetan language and returned to Tibet.

The king also went into seclusion, lasting more than three years. He wrote many religious and political commentaries during this time. Later, in the cause of peace, King Song-tsen Gampo divided Tibet into administrative districts and made many laws.

King Song-tsen Gampo also built the Potala Palace, a magnificent example of Tibetan architecture, and encouraged the translation of many Buddhist works into Tibetan.

He had two wives. One was the daughter of the Tang Dynasty emperor, Tangtai Zong. The other was the daughter of the King of Nepal.

For his great accomplishments, King Song-tsen Gampo is still remembered throughout Tibetan areas today.

Conversation

John: Zhaxi, I’ve heard a lot about Song-tsen Gampo. Can you please tell me why he is so important to Tibetans?
Zhaxi: He is one of the most famous Tibetan kings. He lived a long time ago.

John: When and where was he born?
Zhaxi: He was born in today’s Tibet in the Palace of Unchanging Compassion in 617 AD. He became king when he was thirteen years old.

John: What is he especially remembered for?
Zhaxi: When he became king, Tibetans did not have a written language. He sent one of his officials to India. After some years of study he returned to Tibet, and made an alphabet that was later used to write Tibetan. He also passed many laws and divided Tibet into administrative districts. He also built the Potala Palace in today’s Lhasa.

John: Did he marry?
Zhaxi: Yes, he had two wives. One was the daughter of a Tang emperor and the other one was the daughter of the king of Nepal. Song-tsen Gampo is still remembered by Tibetans today. There are many folktales and songs about him in Tibetan areas as well as much historical material.
约翰：扎西，我听过很多关于松赞干布的故事。你能告诉我他为什么对藏人来说如此重要吗？
扎西：他是最著名的吐蕃国王之一。
约翰：他什么时候在哪儿生的？
扎西：他于公元617年出生于如今西藏的永久慈悲宫。他十三岁的时候就成了吐蕃国王。
约翰：为什么人们这样纪念他？
扎西：他当上国王的时候，藏族还没有文字。于是他派遣一位大臣去印度学习。学了几年以后，那位大臣回到西藏创造了一个字母表。后来利用那些字母书写藏文。他还制定了很多法律法规，并把吐蕃划分为不同的地方行政区。他还建造了现在拉萨的布达拉宫。
约翰：他结过婚吗？
扎西：是的，他有两个妃子，一个是唐朝皇帝的女儿，一个尼泊尔国王的女儿。藏族人民至今为都记着松赞干布。藏族地区有很多关于他的故事、歌曲和历史资料。

Drill
—What did Song-tsen Gampo accomplish during his reign?
—King Song-tsen Gampo introduced a written language into Tibet.

a) wrote many religious and political commentaries
b) divided Tibet into administrative districts
c) made many laws
d) encouraged the translation of many Buddhist works into Tibetan

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times.

3. Answer the following questions about the text.
   1) Who was Song-tsen Gampo?  (He was a very famous Tibetan king.)

   2) Was he born in 617 AD?
3) Who were his parents?

__________________________________________________________________________

4) How old was he when he became king?

__________________________________________________________________________

5) Why did King Song-tsen Gampo send Thonmi Sambhota to India?

__________________________________________________________________________

6) How long was King Song-tsen Gampo in seclusion?

__________________________________________________________________________

7) What did he do while he was in seclusion?

__________________________________________________________________________

8) What did King Song-tsen Gampo do in the cause of peace?

__________________________________________________________________________

9) What did he build?

__________________________________________________________________________

10) What translations did King Song-tsen Gampo encourage?

__________________________________________________________________________

11) Is King Song-tsen Gampo still remembered today?

__________________________________________________________________________
Lesson Thirty-Seven

New Words

- **altitude** /æltɪtjʊd/ n. (海拔) 高度
- **Tibetan Plateau** 納木錯高原 (西藏高原)
- **Ladakh** 拉达克
- **Extinct** /ɪkˈstrɪŋkt/ adj. (绝迹的, 灭绝的)
- **harsh highlands** 艰苦的高地
- **blood cells** 血细胞
- **cope with** 应付
- **violent** /ˈvərələnt/ adj. 猛烈的, 强暴的
- **Celsius** /sɛlˈsiːəs/ adj. 摄氏度
- **sweat glands** 汗腺
- **efficient adaptations** 有效适应能力
- **conserving heat** 保存热能
- **bathe** /beɪθ/ v. 洗浴
- **lead yak** 领头的牦牛
- **makes the trail** 留足迹, 踩踏留印迹
- **single file** 一列纵队
- **poor diet** 乏味的食物, 简单的食物
- **coarse grass** 粗草
- **withered leaves and twigs** 枯萎的叶子和枝条
- **surefooted** 脚踏实地的, 稳当的
- **herds** 群众 (兽群)
- **in search of** 寻找
- **herbs** 药草
- **lichen** 青苔, 苔藓
- **gregarious animals** 群居的动物
- **shun contact** 避免接触
- **gestation period** 妊娠期
- **probable** /ˈprəʊbəbl/ adj. 很可能的, 大概的
- **calving pattern** 产 (犊) 式
The wild yak is a very large animal. It was probably domesticated in Tibet over 2,000 years ago. It is estimated that there are now around 10,000 wild yaks. There are more than 12 million domestic yaks grazing on the Tibetan Plateau.

The domestic yak is smaller than the wild yak.

The largest wild yak may weigh 1,000 kilograms. They live at high altitudes of between 3,200 and 5,400 meters on the Tibetan Plateau. Some have been seen as far east as Gansu Province and to the south in Ladakh. They are thought to be extinct in Nepal.

These large animals are well suited to the harsh highlands. They have more blood cells than lowland cattle. This means they obtain more oxygen and this allows them to live comfortably at high altitudes.

They are able to cope with the long, cold winter months of violent winds and snowstorms. The temperature can be as low as –40 degrees Celsius.

The wild yaks have thick, long coats and few sweat glands. These are efficient adaptations for conserving heat. They can bathe in lakes and streams in extreme cold. They can travel in deep snow. A lead yak makes the trail and the others follow in single file, carefully stepping in the leader’s footsteps.

In winter they survive on a poor diet of dry, coarse grass and withered leaves and twigs.

In spring these surefooted animals often travel in large herds of 100-200. They go up to the higher grasslands of the Tibetan Plateau in search of new grass, herbs and lichens. They are gregarious animals but shun contact with humans.
The young are born in the spring months of April, May and June after a gestation period of nine months. It is probable that the wild yak follow the calving pattern of domesticated yaks of giving birth to a single calf in alternate years. A calf is fully grown in 6-8 years. The life span of the yak is about 25 years.

Over the last 50-60 years there has been a rapid decline in the numbers of wild yaks. Uncontrolled hunting during the second half of the twentieth century and now poaching are important reasons why there are fewer and fewer wild yaks.

Others reasons are bigger herds of domestic yaks that have moved into the places where wild yaks live and diseases that wild yaks have caught from domestic yaks.

**Exercises**

1. Learn the new words.

2. Read the text several times

3. Answer the following questions.
   1) Have you seen a wild yak? If you did, describe it. Where was the wild yak when you saw it? What was it doing? What did you think when you looked at it?
   2) If you have never seen a wild yak, would you like to? Why or why not?
   3) Have you heard people in your village talk about wild yaks? Who were these people and what did they say?
   4) Were there wild yaks in your home area in the past? How do you know this?
   5) There are not many wild yaks left in the world today. If you were a wild yak, what would you like to say to human beings?

4. Answer each question with a complete sentence.
   1) How much does a fully-grown wild yak weigh? ________________________________

   2) At what age is a wild yak fully-grown? ________________________________

   3) Give two reasons for the decline in the numbers of wild yaks.____________________

   4) What do wild yaks eat?___________________________________________________

   5) When was the wild yak first domesticated in Tibet?_________________________

   6) Give two examples of how the wild yak is adapted to the harsh conditions of life on the Tibetan Plateau.

   7) What does “natural habitat” mean?__________________________________________

   8) What is a “gregarious animal”?__________________________________________
9) Are there more wild yaks than domestic yaks on the Tibetan Plateau? 

10) What is meant by “in single file”? 

5. Are these statements true or false? If a sentence is false, explain why.

1) There are more wild yaks today than there were fifty years ago. True False

2) High grasslands are favorite grazing areas for wild yaks in summer. True False

3) Yaks never bathe in severe cold. True False

4) The maximum age for a yak is about fifty years. True False

5) Young yaks mature in about seven years. True False

6) Wild yaks are sure-footed animals. True False
**Lesson Thirty-Eight**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Words</th>
<th>Definitions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hydatid /'haɪdətɪd/ n. 咡虫水泡</td>
<td>包虫,水泡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liverworm</td>
<td>肝虫</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egg /eg/ n. (QStringLiteral)</td>
<td>蛋,卵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>larva /'lɑːvə/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>幼虫</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasty /ˈnɑːsti/ adj</td>
<td>not pleasant, bad 令人讨厌的,险恶的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immature /ɪməˈtʃuə/ adj</td>
<td>未成熟的,发育未全的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapeworm /ˈteɪpwaːm/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>A parasite which attaches itself to the intestines and can travel to other organs of the body. 绦虫</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parasite /ˈpærəsæt/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>A living thing, which lives off another living thing. 寄生虫</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infection /ɪnˈfɛkʃn/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>Something that causes a disease in a body, so the body becomes infected. 传染病,感染</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intestines /ɪnˈtestɪns/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>The part of the body into which the remains of food passes after the stomach. 肠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liver /ˈlɪvər/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>A large organ of the body, which is a cleaning organ for the body. 肝脏</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyst /ˈsɪst/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>A sac of fluid, which forms in the body and is usually damaging to health. 囊肿</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allergy /əˈləʊdʒɪ/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>A bad body response to a substance. 敏感症</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allergic /əˈlɜːrɪk/ adj</td>
<td>People can be allergic to many substances such as some foods, dust, pollen, fur or poisonous fluids from cysts. 过敏的,过敏症的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>symptom /ˈsɪmptrəm/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>A sign that you are ill. 症状</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slaughter house or abattoir /ˈslɔːtər houz/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>A building where animals are killed for food. 屠宰场</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>precaution /ˈprɛkʃən/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>Taking action to prevent something dangerous or unpleasant happening. 预防</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motto /ˈmɒtəʊ/ n. .sharedInstance</td>
<td>A sentence or some words encouraging people to do something good and helpful. 座右铭，格言</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hydatid Disease

Hydatid is a nasty disease. People become ill when they are infected with the immature form of the tapeworm called *echinococcus granulosus* or liverworm. The worm lives in dogs and foxes. From these carriers the tapeworms are passed to yaks, lowland cattle, sheep, goats and humans. These tapeworms are found in many parts of the world. They are a serious health risk to people who come into contact with infected animals.

You can be infected after touching an infected animal. After that you touch your face and mouth with dirty hands. The eggs enter your body. The eggs develop into larvae that move into the intestines. From the intestines the larvae travel to the liver through blood vessels. Cysts form around the larva within the liver. The cysts grow and grow over a long period. This may be from five to twenty years. The cysts contain infected fluid. When they have grown big, they can block blood vessels and the infected fluid can leak into the lungs, heart, brain and bones.

These are the common symptoms of hydatid disease.

- The liver hurts and the skin and eyes become yellow or jaundiced.
- Lung cysts cause coughing and chest pains.
- The heart can become painful and the heart beats irregularly.
- Bone cysts cause bones to break easily.
- Some people develop an allergic reaction that causes skin rashes, itching and fever.

If anyone has been in contact with infected animals and develops any of these symptoms, they should visit a doctor immediately.

- X-rays and scans can take pictures of the body and show cysts.
- A surgeon can remove cysts.
- A drug called albenzadole is available, but it is only 30% successful in treating hydatid disease.

Precautions against the spread of this disease are to

- Wash your hands after touching animals.
- Keep slaughterhouses clean.
- Do not let dogs near slaughterhouses.
- Treat infected dogs and other animals as quickly as possible. This may mean killing them and burning their bodies.
这些是包虫疾病的通常症状

- 肝脏疼痛，皮肤和眼睛变成黄色或患黄疸病。
- 肺包囊引起咳嗽和胸部疼痛。
- 心脏疼痛，心跳无规律。
- 骨包囊导致骨头容易断裂。
- 有些人身上会出现一种过敏反应，导致皮肤出现皮疹，瘙痒和发烧。
- 如果任何一个人和受感染的动物接触后产生以上症状，那么此人就应该立即去看医生。
- X 光和扫描能找出人体内的包囊。
- 一位外科医生能除去包囊。
- 有药物可治包虫疾病，但成功率只有 30%。
- 预防这种疾病的措施有:
  - 与动物接触后洗手。
  - 使屠宰场保持干净。
  - 不要让狗接近屠宰场。
  - 尽快治疗受感染的狗和其它动物。这有可能意味着把它们杀了，然后焚烧尸体。

MOTTO       TAKE CARE       THINK CLEAN

•196•
**Conversation**

**Dorji:** Do you know anyone who has had Hydatid disease?

**Zhoma:** One of my classmates died of that disease two years ago.

**Dorji:** That’s terrible!

**Zhoma:** Yes, we were all really sad. He was sick for a long time and then he died.

**Dorji:** What should someone do if they think they might have Hydatid disease?

**Zhoma:** They should go to a good doctor at once. He should send them to a hospital for X-rays and scans.

**Dorji:** What is the treatment?

**Zhoma:** Surgery to cut away the cysts is one treatment. Another is to take the medicine called albenzadole. This medicine is not always effective.

**Dorji:** What can we do to prevent getting Hydatid disease?

**Zhoma:** We must always be very careful when touching dogs, which may have the disease. We must wash our hands after touching these dogs. That way, we can avoid getting the eggs of the liverworm into our mouths.
多杰：你认识患有包虫疾病的人吗？
卓玛：我的一个同学两年前因为这种疾病而去世了。
多杰：那太不幸了！
卓玛：是的，我们都很伤心。他是患病很长一段时间后去世的。
多杰：如果某些人发现自己患有包虫疾病时应该做些什么？
卓玛：他们应该马上去看一位有经验的医生。医生应该让他们照 X 光和做扫描。
多杰：应该怎样治疗呢？
卓玛：做手术能够除去包囊，还可以服药治疗，但药物不是很有效。
多杰：我们应该怎样预防包虫疾病呢？
卓玛：当我们和可能患有这种病的狗接触的时候应该非常小心。我们和这样的狗接触之后一定要洗手。这样就可以避免肝虫的卵进入我们的嘴里。

Exercises

1. Learn the new words.
2. Read the text several times.
3. Try to be aware of these kinds of diseases in our life.
4. Discuss these questions in a small group.
   1) What causes Hydatid disease?
   2) What should someone do if they think they have Hydatid disease?
   3) What can a doctor do to know if a person has Hydatid disease?
   4) Had you heard of Hydatid disease before reading this text? If so when did you hear about it, who told you and where were you?
   5) Is there a Tibetan name for Hydatid disease in your home area? If there is, what is it?
   6) What can people do to not get this disease?
   7) Tell me about any people you know who have or have had this disease.
   8) What are the symptoms of this disease?

5. Are these statements true or false? Explain why the false statements are untrue.
   1) All animals are infected with Echinococcus.
   2) Hydatid disease occurs in many parts of the world.
   3) Hydatid disease is common in the Tibetan grasslands.
   4) There is no treatment for Hydatid disease.
   5) Surgery is one treatment for Hydatid disease.
   6) It is a good idea to wash your hands after touching an infected animal or if you suspect an animal to be infected.
   7) Hydatid disease is easy to treat.
南希结婚了。她的丈夫约翰也在中国。他们有两个孩子：一个儿子，一个女儿。她的儿子也住在伦敦。

这是我的朋友南希。她来自英国。她的父亲是个教授，住在伦敦。她的母亲是个科学家，是个小学生。这个男孩是我的弟弟，他是个中学生。这位年轻人是我，我是个大学生。

我的全家福
这是我的一张全家福。这位年长的男人是我的爸爸，他是个工程师。这位年长的妇女是我的妈妈，她是个医生。这位年轻的妇女是我的姐姐，她是个教师。这位姑娘是我的妹妹。这位年长的妇女是我的姐姐。这位年长的男人是我的爸爸。这位年长的男人是我的爸爸。
这些图片里有什么？

看这些图片，我们可以看到很多东西。这是一支钢笔，那是一支铅笔。这是一个时钟，那是一只手表。另外四幅图片中你看到了什么？我们看见里面有一张地图，一幅画，一个收音机和四本书。

第六课

女孩们

这个房间里住着四个女孩。其中两个学英语，另外两个学藏文。她们都很年轻。

卓玛是个新生，她十七岁了。她学英语。央宗也是个新生，但是她学的是藏文。她今年十八岁。德吉和拉毛是老生，她们都二十岁了，一个学习藏文，另一个学习英语。

第七课

约翰·赤纳尔

约翰·赤纳尔是个美国人。他来自波士顿，在我们的大学学习。他的专业是中国历史。他对这个专业很感兴趣。

他和另外两个男孩住在 309 房间。他们都是美国人，但是来自不同的城市。他们相处得很好，经常互相帮助互相学习。
第八课

玛丽

玛丽每天六点钟起床。她六点十五分吃完早饭后就去上学。
上午她有三节或四节课。上完以后回家吃午饭。她下午没课, 就在家里学习。

第九课

我们的教室

这是我们的教室。它很小, 但是非常干净、整齐。
这是一张课桌, 上面有一个时钟和一本书。教室里有四把椅子。墙上有块黑板。这两面墙上有几幅图片和一张中国地图。
我喜欢我们的教室。

第十课

我们

我们

我们的教室

这是我们的教室。它很小, 但是非常干净、整齐。
这是一张课桌, 上面有一个时钟和一本书。教室里有四把椅子。墙上有块黑板。这两面墙上有几幅图片和一张中国地图。
我喜欢我们的教室。
玛丽·库伯

这是玛丽，来自英国。她姓库伯，今年十九岁。她的父亲是个医生，名叫亨利·库伯，在伦敦的一家医院工作。库伯太太也在那里工作，她是位护士。她的父亲是个医生，名叫亨利·库伯，在伦敦的一家医院工作。库伯太太也在那里工作，她是位护士。

玛丽现在在中国。她在北京大学学习中文，现在已经大二了。她住在北京大学的那栋楼上，房间号码是 204。她和另外一个女孩一起住。那女孩名叫贝蒂·布朗，来自美国，也是学中文的。

玛丽现在在中国。她在北京大学学习中文，现在已经大二了。她住在北京大学的那栋楼上，房间号码是 204。她和另外一个女孩一起住。那女孩名叫贝蒂·布朗，来自美国，也是学中文的。

这两个女孩是好朋友。她俩都喜欢中国。我非常了解她们，我们经常互相帮助。

玛丽·库伯

这是玛丽，来自英国。她姓库伯，今年十九岁。她的父亲是个医生，名叫亨利·库伯，在伦敦的一家医院工作。库伯太太也在那里工作，她是位护士。她的父亲是个医生，名叫亨利·库伯，在伦敦的一家医院工作。库伯太太也在那里工作，她是位护士。

玛丽现在在中国。她在北京大学学习中文，现在已经大二了。她住在北京大学的那栋楼上，房间号码是 204。她和另外一个女孩一起住。那女孩名叫贝蒂·布朗，来自美国，也是学中文的。

这两个女孩是好朋友。她俩都喜欢中国。我非常了解她们，我们经常互相帮助。
在教室里
现在是下午三点，学生们都在教室里。有的在听录音，有的在做练习。其他人在用英语对话。老师在教室里走来走去，帮助学生解决难题。现在她正在给一位女学生讲解某事。

颐和园
这是颐和园。它是北京的一个非常美丽的公园。里面有树木花草，以及很多出色的建筑物。这边有座小山，那边有个湖泊。现在公园里有很多人，有些在附近散步，有些在湖里划船。他们都玩的很开心。

季节和月份
一年有四个季节，各是春天、夏天、秋天和冬天。一年有十二个月，它们是一月、二月、三月、四月、五月、六月、七月、八月、九月、十月、十一月和十二月。一年中有多少个星期？有五十二个星期。一年有多少天？一年通常有三百六十五天，一个闰年有三百六十六天。
港。
他还打算去南方。下周他要坐飞机去上海。他将参观南方的几个大城市，然后坐火车去香
萨是个美丽的城市，而且这里的人们特别友好。他想去参观拉萨所有好玩的地方。
帕特森先生来自加拿大。他目前在中国参观。他住在西藏宾馆。他喜欢拉萨。他认为拉

帕特森先生
帕特森先生来自加拿大。他目前在中国参观。他住在西藏宾馆。他喜欢拉萨。他认为拉萨是个美丽的城市，而且这里的人们特别友好。他想去参观拉萨所有好玩的地方。
他还打算去南方。下周他要坐飞机去上海。他将参观南方的几个大城市，然后坐火车去香港。
从前有一个叫虎狮的国王有很多钱、金子和仆人。他的右腿是瘸的,左眼是瞎的。一天早晨,他外出打猎时发现一个画家在河边画画。国王见他画得非常漂亮,于是让画家给他画幅肖像。画家同意了。画完后,画里的国王没有瘸腿,他的左眼也不是瞎的。国王看了那幅画非常生气,于是杀掉了那个画家。然后又找了一个画家给他画像。这位画家特别有名,他把国王画得非常真实:右腿是瘸的,左眼是瞎的。国王见了画后又勃然大怒,杀掉了那个画家。第二天,国王找了另外一个叫多杰的画家给他画像。多杰不出名,但他非常聪明。在他的画里,国王非常英俊,手里握着一支枪,右腿踩在一块岩石上,左眼闭着,好像正在瞄准一只老虎。国王见到此画后非常高兴,给了画家多杰很多钱和金子。
我的暑假计划
今年夏天我要回家。首先我要坐火车去南京，在那里呆几天。你也知道我有很多朋友在那里。然后我要坐汽车回家。
假期里我要好好休息一下。有可能我会天天去游泳。我还要复习功课和读书。我希望能读几本小说。
我要在家里呆一个多月。8月20号左右我要回北京。

通知
大家请注意：星期三下午有一位美国朋友要来参观我们大学。他要给我们讲一下美国的工人运动。请大家两点正到会议大厅。演讲完毕之后我们可以提问题。三点四十五分将会放映一部关于美国工人生活的电影。
透西奥和安娜

透西奥来自日本。当然了，他的日语相当好。他会说好几种外语。他的英语很棒，而且他的德语也一般。他能阅读德文，但是不会说。

安娜来自瑞典。她也会说好几种外语。她的英语非常好，她的西班牙语也不错。但她的日语却不太理想。她能听懂一点点，也只会说一点点。她能读和写日语，但不是很好。

一位空姐

芭芭拉是位空姐。她在一条重要的航线上工作。她喜欢这份工作，觉得她的工作很有趣。她经常去欧洲和南美。她喜欢南美。那里的天气特别好。

芭芭拉做安全演示和回答他们的问题。她喜欢她的工作。
当他们两个爬进房子的时候，两只老鼠也爬了进去。那女人见了那两只老鼠，又向她丈夫大喊：“看！有一个爬进来了！”

听到喊叫那个小偷被吓坏了，赶紧爬了出去。他告诉另一个小偷：“我爬进去时被一个老鼠咬了。我不敢再进去了！”

正当他们两个爬进房子的时候，两只老鼠也爬了进去。那家的女主人正好看见一只老鼠爬进了屋里，就向她丈夫说：“看！有一个爬进来了！”

听到喊叫那个小偷被吓坏了，赶紧爬了出去。他告诉另一个小偷：“我爬进去时被一个女人发现了！”

另一个小偷不相信他的话，说：“我不信。我们两个一起进去看看。”

正当他们两个爬进房子的时候，两只老鼠也爬了进去。那女人见了那两只老鼠，又向她丈夫喊道：“抓住它们！”两个小偷听了吓得要死。他们以为那个女人发现了他们，所以迅速逃离了。
在乡村的一天

瓦特先生和瓦特太太住在一个大城市里。有个星期天他们到乡村去了。他们带了些食物。瓦特太太把面包、酥油、肉、牛奶、水果和蛋糕装在一个篮子里。他们坐在一棵大树下吃午饭。他们谈论了去英国的旅行，而且采了很多花。晚上他俩开车回家了。

在离市中心不远的一所房子里。我希望有一天能去海外度假。

技术学院的学生。他想当一名建筑师。我六个月前开始在一个政府部门工作。我和父母一起住

我的两个姐妹都已经结婚了。我妹妹是上个月结的。她丈夫是个澳大利亚人。她现在住在堪培

我家总共有六个人：两个女孩，两个男孩和我的父母。我的两个姐妹都已经结婚了。我妹妹是上个月结的。她丈夫是个澳大利亚人。她现在住在堪培拉，是一家公司总裁的秘书。我姐姐三年前就结婚了，已经生了个小女儿。我弟弟彼得是一所

我的家庭

我想告诉你关于我家的一些情况。我家总共有六个人：两个女孩，两个男孩和我的父母。我的两个姐妹都已经结婚了。我妹妹是上个月结的。她丈夫是个澳大利亚人。她现在住在堪培拉，是一家公司总裁的秘书。我姐姐三年前就结婚了，已经生了个小女儿。我弟弟彼得是一所技术学院的学生。他想当一名建筑师。我六个月前开始在一个政府部门工作。我和父母一起住在离市中心不远的一所小房子里。我希望有一天能去海外度假。
上个月史密斯一家搬进了位于穆尔路的一套新公寓里。这套公寓里有三个卧室，一个大客厅，一个浴室和一个厨房。他们搬到穆尔路之前住在一个很贫穷的街区。那里的街道很脏。一下雨，到处都是水。史密斯一家在他们的新公寓里非常开心。这套房子又大又干净，而且还很漂亮很安静。公寓楼前面有个花园，他们的孩子可以在那里玩耍。

艾维斯·普瑞斯莱

艾维斯·普瑞斯莱于1935年1月8日出生于密西西比州的图珀洛市。艾维斯13岁的时候和他的家人搬到了田纳西州的孟菲斯市。1954年，艾维斯在那里录制了他的第一首歌。之后发生了很多事情：他的唱片销量高达上百万，在美国军队里服役，去了好莱坞，并且出演过33部电影。

艾维斯把黑人音乐和乡村音乐融和在了一起。他的歌开创了美国音乐的一个新的时期。1977年8月16日，他在孟菲斯的家里去世。

艾维斯·普瑞斯莱
杰克·伦敦

杰克·伦敦是个著名的美国作家。1876年1月12日他出生于加利福尼亚州的旧金山市。由于家庭非常贫穷，杰克不得不离开学校去赚钱。他在很多不同的行业努力工作过。

后来，杰克又回到了学校，但是他没有呆下去。1897年他去阿拉斯加淘金。在那里他找到了写他的书和故事的灵感，于是他回到家乡开始写作。他的写作很成功，因此他二十几岁时就变得非常富有，而且很出名。

杰克·伦敦不是一个幸运的人。1916年，他在健康极差的情况下自杀身亡了。享年仅40岁。
我的爷爷
自从六年前我奶奶去世后，我爷爷就和我们住在一起。他以前是个化学家。现在他都快八十岁了，但依然很健康。
爷爷的生活很平淡。他喜欢一大早就吃早饭，而且总是吃同样的东西：米饭、水果和咖啡。
吃完早饭后他就散步去买晨报。他每天早晨这样，已经很多年了，因此街上的人们都认识他。
这个月爷爷的身体不是很好。最近几个星期他得了重感冒，在床上躺了好几天。
我喜欢听他讲述他童年的生活。他给我们讲很多有趣的故事。他总是说：“那时候生活比现在困难多了。”

我们的邻居
赫奥先生是我们的新隔邻邻居。他是个飞行员。
下个月他要去纽约。之后的一个月他要去东京。
他目前在马德里。他是一周前去西班牙的。两个星期以后他将回到伦敦。
他只有四十一岁，但他已经去过世界上的每一个国家。
赫奥先生是个很幸运的男人。然而他的妻子就不怎么幸运了，因为她经常呆在家里。
第二十七課 (B)

དིངུལ་པོ་ལ་འགྲོ་བོ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

གངས་ཏུ་སོ་ལོ་རང་བུ་བོ་ངས་ཞིང་དིངུལ་བོ་ལ་འགྲོ་བོ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

དིངུལ་པོ་ལ་རང་བུ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

གངས་ཏུ་སོ་ལོ་རང་བུ་བོ་ངས་ཞིང་དིངུལ་བོ་ལ་འགྲོ་བོ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

དིངུལ་པོ་ལ་རང་བུ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

གངས་ཏུ་སོ་ལོ་རང་བུ་བོ་ངས་ཞིང་དིངུལ་བོ་ལ་འགྲོ་བོ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

དིངུལ་པོ་ལ་རང་བུ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

གངས་ཏུ་སོ་ལོ་རང་བུ་བོ་ངས་ཞིང་དིངུལ་བོ་ལ་འགྲོ་བོ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

དིངུལ་པོ་ལ་རང་བུ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

གངས་ཏུ་སོ་ལོ་རང་བུ་བོ་ངས་ཞིང་དིངུལ་བོ་ལ་འགྲོ་བོ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

དིངུལ་པོ་ལ་རང་བུ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

གངས་ཏུ་སོ་ལོ་རང་བུ་བོ་ངས་ཞིང་དིངུལ་བོ་ལ་འགྲོ་བོ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

དིངུལ་པོ་ལ་རང་བུ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

གངས་ཏུ་སོ་ལོ་རང་བུ་བོ་ངས་ཞིང་དིངུལ་བོ་ལ་འགྲོ་བོ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

དིངུལ་པོ་ལ་རང་བུ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

གངས་ཏུ་སོ་ལོ་རང་བུ་བོ་ངས་ཞིང་དིངུལ་བོ་ལ་འགྲོ་བོ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

དིངུལ་པོ་ལ་རང་བུ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

གངས་ཏུ་སོ་ལོ་རང་བུ་བོ་ངས་ཞིང་དིངུལ་བོ་ལ་འགྲོ་བོ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་

དིངུལ་པོ་ལ་རང་བུ་བོ་ཐོང་མོ་བོ་
很久以前，一个叫东智的穷人有个富有的邻居。那个邻居家有很多糌粑，但是他很贪婪，从来不肯别人吃他的糌粑。

有一天东智的糌粑吃完了，他想：“如果我去向我的邻居要点糌粑，他肯定不会给的。看来我得骗一点过来。”

那天晚上东智拿一些木柴到花园里生起火来。他那富有的邻居见了以后觉得很奇怪。他到东智家去问：“东智，你今晚为什么烧火啊？”

东智说：“昨天我听别人说拉萨的糌粑很贵，所以我想做点糌粑到拉萨去卖。”

那富有的邻居觉得这个主意太好了。他对东智说：“我亲爱的邻居，我可以和你一起去拉萨卖糌粑吗？”

东智说：“当然可以。”

第二天早晨那个富人把两袋糌粑驮在一头牦牛背上，东智却把装有草料和树叶的两个袋子绑在了一头驴背上。

然后他俩就往西藏出发了。到了晚上天黑下来时，他俩呆在一座寺院里过夜。那富人非常疲倦，所以很快就睡着了。

东智假装睡觉。到了半夜，他起来把他的袋子里的草料和树叶喂给了牦牛和驴，然后把邻居的糌粑倒进了自己的袋子里，并且把邻居的空袋子放在寺院里的佛像手上，还在佛像的嘴里放了一些糌粑。

第二天早晨富人发现他的糌粑没了，袋子空空的放在佛像的手上。他简直惊呆了。

东智说：“可能是寺院里的佛太饿了，就把你的糌粑给吃掉了。看看他的嘴就知道了。”

富人伤心地说：“现在我不能去拉萨了。我要回家，你一个人去拉萨吧。”

东智说：“我想我也要回家。我不想一个人去拉萨。”
一次令人兴奋的旅行
我刚刚收到我哥哥蒂姆的一封信。他在澳大利亚。在那里已经六个月了。
蒂姆是个工程师，在一家大公司工作。他已经参观了澳大利亚的很多不同的地方。他刚
买了一辆澳大利亚小汽车，就去了位于澳大利亚中部的一个小镇——艾利斯·斯普林斯。很快
他要去达尔文，然后从那里开车去伯斯。
我哥哥以前从来没去国外，所以他觉得这次旅行非常兴奋。

特雷弗·波特曼
特雷弗·波特曼二十四岁，比泰德只大两岁。他已经拿到了工程学学位，和泰德在同
家工厂里工作（同一家工厂，同样的工作时间，但在不同的部门。）
不同的是，特雷弗已经结婚了。他有妻子和小孩——一个叫萨拉的女儿。他还有自己的
房子——有点小，但是非常现代，带有两个卧室和一个小花园。
有什么担忧和困难吗？没有。比如泰德，他很开心，尽管他没有很多钱。每个月他交完
税款、房费、电费、煤气费和水费，还要买吃的和穿的，这样剩下的钱就不多了。所以不考虑
买车。目前他还没有小汽车，或许明年就有了。
泰德听到这个消息非常吃惊。当然也很高兴，因为他从来没有期望能找到这辆车。这辆被偷掉的自行车

泰德·洛宾逊上个星期一直很担心。上星期二他收到了当地警察局的一封信，信中要求他去一趟警察局。泰德捉摸着为什么警察要找他。他昨天去了警察局后就不再担心了。

在警察局里，一个满面笑容的警察告诉他他的自行车找到了。警察说五天前在一个四百英里之外的小村庄里找到了那辆自行车，现在正在火车上送往他家。

泰德听到这个消息非常吃惊。当然也很高兴，因为他从来没有期望能找到这辆车。这辆自行车是二十年前被偷的，当时泰德只有十五岁。
飞行员没有答应他因为那个旅途太危险了。弗斯特飞行员带乘客到了很多不寻常的地方。那架出租飞机是个能乘七个人的小型飞机，在哪儿都能着落。在地中海上。那里夏天气候炎热干燥，冬天雨水很多。炎热干燥的山上种植着桔子、柠檬和橄榄。

西欧
西欧是大约 3.3 亿人的家园。其中德国的人口最多，但比利时和荷兰是人口最密集的国家，因为它们的面积比较小。

北部常年下雨，很少有太热或者太冷的天气。西班牙和意大利是地中海国家，因为它们在地中海上。那里夏天气候炎热干燥，冬天雨水很多。炎热干燥的山上种植着桔子、柠檬和橄榄。

欧洲最高的山峰是阿尔卑斯山脉的勃朗山，而庇利纽斯山脉常年白雪覆盖。北部国家的语言主要来源于古德语，其它国家的语言源自 2000 年前的意大利人说的拉丁语。

一辆出租飞机
本·弗斯特飞行员买了一辆非同寻常的出租飞机，开始了一个新的服务业。那架出租飞机是个能乘七个人的小型飞机，在哪儿都能着落。

弗斯特飞行员的第一位乘客是从伯明翰到维尔斯山中的一个小村庄去的医生，从那时起，弗斯特飞行员带乘客到了很多不寻常的地方。

弗斯特飞行员刚刚拒绝了一个想到大西洋的一个小岛上去的一个商人古怪请求。弗斯特飞行员没有答应他因为那个旅途太危险了。
驴酥油
一个国王要求当地人交纳酥油税。如果他们不交纳，国王就会严厉地惩罚他们。正因为这个原因，当地人都不喜欢这个国王。
东巴大叔非常贫穷，他没有多少财产。有一天，东巴大叔到国王家附近开始打自己的儿子。国王看见了就问东巴大叔：“你为什么打你的儿子啊？”
东巴大叔伤心地回答：“我儿子杀掉了我的驴，现在我交纳不了你的酥油税了。”
国王一时无语，过了一会儿才说：“你是用驴酥油给我纳税的？”
东巴大叔说：“对啊。”
国王把东巴大叔带到自己的库房里，问：“你知道哪块酥油是你的驴酥油吗？”
东巴大叔说：“是的，我知道。”
国王说：“我不吃驴酥油。请把你的驴酥油从我的库房里拿走。”
东巴大叔挑了一块最好的酥油，然后高高兴兴地回家去了。从此国王再也不敢向当地人征酥油税了。
你要是收到别人的邀请，一定要加入他们……这是很有趣的事！

藏族赛马会

你曾经听说过康巴地区的赛马会吗？虽然很多地方都举行赛马会，但是最隆重的在玉树和理塘。藏族男子们身着藏装，骑着骏马在草原上奔驰。骑手们常用步枪和哈达等物来展示自己的骑术。他们骑着马用步枪射击纸制的小靶子，还从马背上捡起排列在地面上的数条哈达和理塘。藏族男子们身着藏装，骑着骏马在草原上奔驰。骑手们常用步枪和哈达等物来展示自己的骑术、射术和矫健的身姿。他们骑着马用步枪射击纸制的小靶子。哈达，布条，用细毛线编织而成，长数米，上面有精美的图案。他们还从马背上捡起排列在地面上的数条哈达。这些节日还是品尝藏餐的好机会。家人和朋友们在外野餐，吃大量的肉、酸奶、馍馍和面条。尽管人们平时也吃这些食物，但藏族人们可能会邀请你过去坐下来和他们一起吃。假如你要是受到别人的邀请，一定要加入他们……这是很有趣的事！
子时，男子们用他们的靴子有力地踩着地面。是那些舞蹈。几百个藏族男女穿着长袖藏袍翩翩起舞。当女人们优雅地挥动着长长的白色袖子山神。他们还举行了赛马活动、射箭比赛，和摔跤比赛，还有很多舞蹈表演。约翰特别感兴趣还喝了酥油茶。他也喜欢吃煮羊肉和牦牛肉。父亲每天赶着家畜到草地上放牧。他们从母牦牛、奶牛和山羊身上挤奶。扎西的母亲还用奶子制做酥油、干酪、乳酪和酸奶。扎西夏天搬到山上去住。

约翰玩得很开心，他希望能再次拜访扎西的家。

约翰喜欢藏族食物。他吃了在炒熟的青稞里拌进酥油、干酪、茶水和糖后做成的糌粑，还喝了酥油茶。他也喜欢吃煮羊肉和牦牛肉。

约翰在那里的时候，当地的藏族人们过了一个节日。很多藏族聚集在一座大山附近祭拜山神。他们还举行了赛马活动、射箭比赛，和摔跤比赛，还有很多舞蹈表演。约翰特别感兴趣的是那些舞蹈。几百个藏族男女穿着长袖藏袍翩翩起舞。当女人们优雅地挥动着长长的白色袖子时，男子们用他们的靴子有力地踩着地面。

约翰玩得很开心，他希望能再次拜访扎西的家。
的创始人宗喀巴就诞生于此地，后来他进行了一场佛教改革。

毛家住在塔尔寺附近。塔尔寺是藏传佛教格鲁派（黄教）的一座著名寺院。1357 年，格鲁派的创始人宗喀巴就诞生于此地，后来他进行了一场佛教改革。
利斯充满热情地观赏着她俩一起参观的这座寺院。拉毛给她讲解了各种不同的佛像以及其它神像的意义。美丽的佛像给利斯留下了深刻的印象。她对酥油花特别感兴趣。她还觉得寺院的氛围非常特别。转动的经轮，燃烧柏叶的香味，朗朗的诵经声和洪亮的钟声都给她留下了难以忘怀的印象。

她们还在寺院里看见了很多喇嘛和朝圣者。朝圣者们来自西藏和甘肃、四川、云南、青海等省的藏区。很多朝圣者在供奉着宗喀巴大师遗物的佛殿前面磕长头。

利斯和拉毛还参观了寺院的印经院。在这里，用木版手工印刷经文。木版是人工雕刻的，涂上墨水后就可以印出经文。寺院收藏了很多非常有价值的经文。离开寺院时利斯觉得她看到了典型的藏族文化。她决定学习更多的关于藏族历史和宗教的知识，以便她下次参观这座寺院时能懂得多一点。

第三十六课
吐蕃国王——松赞干布

松赞干布于公元 617 年出生于永久慈悲宫。他的父亲是则日·松赞，他的母亲是则邦·萨智玛托伽。

他十三岁时即位。他在统治期间完成了几项很重要的事业。当时藏族还没有文字，于是松赞干布派他的大臣吞弥·桑布扎去印度学习。在那里他学习了不同的语言。后来他引进和创制了最适合藏语的文字回到了吐蕃。

松赞干布还隐居过三年多，在此期间他写了很多有关宗教和政治方面的文集。后来为了和平，松赞干布把吐蕃划分为不同的行政管理区域，并且制定了很多法律。

松赞干布在位时还修建了布达拉宫，那是藏族建筑业的一大奇观。他大力支持藏族译师把很多佛教经典翻译成了藏文。

他有两个妃子，一个是唐朝皇帝唐太宗的女儿，另一个是尼泊尔国王的女儿。由于他伟大的业绩，藏族人民至今都还记着他。
二十五年。

牛一样,一年只生一头小牛犊。一只小牛犊需要六至八年才能完全长大。野牦牛的寿命大约为

的草地上去寻找绿草、药草和青苔。它们是群居性动物,避免和人类接触。

余的排成一行跟随在后面,小心地沿着领头牦牛的足迹前进。

能在寒冷刺骨的湖水和河水中沐浴,也能在很厚的积雪上行走。一个领头牦牛在前面带路,其

题。

多,这意味着它们能够获取更多的氧气,因此它们可以在高海拔地带过得非常舒服。

的高海拔地带。在甘肃东边和拉达克南部一带也发现了野牦牛。在尼泊尔野牦牛已经绝种了。

在大概有一万头野牦牛。青藏高原上放牧着大约一千二百多万头驯养的牦牛。

•224•

野牦牛

野牦牛是一种体形巨大的动物。大约在两千多年前它就开始在西藏被驯养。人们估计现在

大概有一万头野牦牛。青藏高原上放牧着大约一千二百多万头驯养的牦牛。

驯养的牦牛比野牦牛小。

最大的野牦牛可能重达一千公斤。它们生活在青藏高原上三千二百米到五千四百米之间

的高海拔地带。在甘肃东边和拉达克南部一带也发现了野牦牛。在尼泊尔野牦牛已经绝种了。

这些体形巨大的动物很适合在气候恶劣的高地生存。它们的血细胞比低海拔带的牛的要多,

这意味着它们能够获取更多的氧气,因此它们可以在高海拔地带过得非常舒服。

它们能够应付寒冷而漫长的冬季,以及狂风雪暴。就算气温降到零下四十摄氏度也没问

题。

野牦牛有很厚的皮和很长的毛,而汗腺极少。这些特点有效地帮助它们保存体温。它们

能在寒冷刺骨的湖水和河水中沐浴,也能在很厚的积雪上行走。一个领头牦牛在前面带路,其

余的排成一行跟随在后面,小心地沿着领头牦牛的足迹前进。

冬天,它们只能以干草、枯叶和嫩枝维持生命。

春天,这些脚步稳健的动物通常会一、两百头成群结队地行走。它们到青藏高原上更高

的草地上去寻找绿草、药草和青苔。它们是群居性动物,避免和人类接触。

春季四月、五月和六月是野牦牛的繁殖期,它们的妊娠期为九个月。野牦牛跟驯养的牦

牛一样,一年只生一头小牛犊。一只小牛犊需要六至八年才能完全长大。野牦牛的寿命大约为

二十五年。
在过去的五、六十年里，野牦牛的数量迅速减少。二十世纪后半期不受控制的狩猎和现在的偷猎是野牦牛变得越来越少的主要因素。

其它因素一个是逐渐壮大的驯养牦牛群，它们霸占了野牦牛的活动区域；另一个是由驯养的牦牛传染给野牦牛的疾病。

【包虫囊病】

包虫囊是一种非常有害的疾病。当人们被发育未成熟的绦虫（也叫包虫粒或肝虫）感染时，人们就会生病。这种虫子寄生在狗和狐狸的体内。这些动物把绦虫传给牦牛、黄牛、绵羊、山羊和人类。世界上很多地方都发现了这种绦虫。与被感染的动物接触是一项非常危险的举动。

如果你触摸了一只被感染的动物，那么你也会被传染。当你用不干净的手触摸自己的脸和嘴时，那些卵就会趁机进入你的体内。那些卵长成幼虫后进入肠道，然后从肠道通过血管进入肝脏。在肝脏里，幼虫的周围会形成包囊。包囊在一个很长的时期内一点一点地生长。这可能要五到二十年的时间。包囊里有被感染的液体。当那些包囊变大时，就会阻塞血管，而且那些被感染的液体会渗入肺、心脏、脑部和骨头里。
শ্বেতাঙ্গী নিবিড়বিশ্বাসী বিষ্ণুরামের দ্বিতীয় ছেলের নাম

শ্বেতাঙ্গীরাম

কে ফাঁদায় প্রবলকামিনী যুগলকে সে কিছু দেখতে পাওয়ায় নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার। নিবিড়বিশ্বাস যে কিছু দেখতে পাওয়ায় নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার। তার নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার। তার নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার। তার নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার। তার নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার।

শ্রীনিতাদর্শ

কে ফাঁদায় প্রবলকামিনী যুগলকে সে কিছু দেখতে পাওয়ায় নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার। নিবিড়বিশ্বাস যে কিছু দেখতে পাওয়ায় নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার। তার নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার। তার নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার। তার নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার। তার নিবিড়বিশ্বাস ছিল তার।

শ্রীনিতাদর্শ

1. শ্রীনিতাদর্শের প্রাচীনকালীন বিশ্বাস বই নাম কলামালয়া রিমিনিং পলিক।
2. The period of my school year is one year. How long is your school year?

“...”

3. I am a student. You are a student. He is a student.

I, You, He = are.is am. are. are. In the picture, Dr. Jigme Rinpoche
3. Are you a student? (yes, no)

2. Is your brother a worker? (is, am, be)

1. Yes, are, is, am (are a student)

• engineer

• technician

are, is, am

are, is, am

are, is, am

are, is, am

are, is, am

are, is, am

are, is, am

are, is, am

are, is, am

are, is, am

are, is, am
1. who is a, are, am
2. boys, students, comrades

Who is he? (I-am-a) She is a doctor. (I-am-a)

1. “who is …” in English and how to use it: who is he? (I-am-a) what is …
2. Is she a doctor? (I-am-a)
3. Apostrophe in English: I’m = I am. He’s = He is. She’s = She is. Isn’t = is not.

boys, students, comrades
1. from I am from Lhasa.

2. in He is in Kham.

3. child a child, two children

Nancy’s family Mary’s husband,

My sister’s children My sisters’ children.

We you they

my your his her its

our your their
What do you see in the picture?

it’s = it is

my/her (my/myself)

my/his (his/himself)
you/your
they/their
my (his, her/their/our)
your/its
your/they/my (their/their/ours)
1. French, German, Chinese, Japanese

2. Chinese

3. People
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>study</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>study</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>study</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>study</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **be** (am, is, are)

- Am I not? (Aren’t I?) - Yes, you are. (You aren’t.)
- Are you not? (Aren’t you?) - Yes, I am. (No, I am not.)
- Is he not? (Isn’t he?) - Yes, he is. (No, he isn’t.)
- Are we not? (Aren’t we?) - Yes, you are. (No, you aren’t.)
- Are you not? (Aren’t you?) - Yes, we are. (No, we aren’t.)
- Are they not? (Aren’t they?) - Yes, they are. (No, they aren’t.)
1. the Smiths  
2. school-boy, picture-book

1) you   2) him   3) it   4) me   5) them 6) you, you  7) us (them)  8) her

They love each other. (interjections  

Come with us, please. (interjections  

They don’t like each other. (interjections  

because  

because or because
1. **Excuse me**

He comes from Boston. (John Turner, he, they)

They come from Lhasa. (They)

2. **Excuse me**

He lives in Room 309. (He, living in 309)

I study English. (I, studying English)
1. quarter  a quarter past six  a quarter to six  a quarter past seven  a quarter to seven

2. then  one time  two times

3. may  can  may

4. quarter past six  a quarter to seven  a quarter past eight

I was in Lhasa then. Then let's begin. Do you have a radio? You may go. May I come in? Yes, you may. No, you may not.

1. at  five, at seven, at

2. to, past, over

3. Do you have a radio? She is an American.
home for lunch ( домой для обеда) 去学校  去学校  去学校  去学校

4.  in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening 早晨 午后 晚上

1. May I help you? 朋友您好 您有什么需要帮助的吗?

2. You’re welcome. 朋友您好 您好

3.  you do  do  他,她,它

4. aren’t = are not  doesn’t = does not

1. help … in … 帮助……在…… (在……帮助我们)

2. Happy birthday to you. 愿你生日快乐 愿你生日快乐 愿你生日快乐

শায়েন্ট্যাক

1. on  on desk, (on the desk) on wall (在桌子上) 但是 但是

2. come in  来 in (adverb 進去) ad 进去 進去

- 237 -
He’s in (་བོད་ཆེན་) the room. (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)

He isn’t in (བི་བོད་བསམ་བྱུགས་) (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)

Put it on (་བོད་ཆེན་) the desk. (ཐེ་རུང་ཕྲིན་བཞིན་) Put it on.(བི་བོད་བསམ་བྱུགས་) (ཐེ་ཞིག་བཞིན་)

3. Please གྱུར་འདྲ་ལ་བོད་ཞིག་བཞིན་ (ཏུ་བཤད་) Help me, please. (དབྱངས་རྒྱུས་བསམ་བྱུགས་)

please (ཀུན་བོད་པའི་ཞིང་བཞིན་)

སྟེངས།

1. there is གང་ there are དབུག་ “there + be གསར་སྡུག་པ་”ཞེས་། དེ་བོད་(བོད་ཆེན་)གཞི་སྣོ། །དབྱངས་པ་ དབུག་ཞིང་ཞིང་ལེགས་པའི་ཞིང་བཞིན་ ཕྱིན་ཐུང་ཕྲིན་བཞིན་ དབྱངས་པའི་ཞིང་བཞིན་ཞིང་བཞིན་ there is གསར་སྡུག་པ་ There is a clock on the wall. (བོད་བསམ་བྱུགས་)དབྱངས་པ་ ཕྱིན་ཐུང་ཕྲིན་བཞིན་ཞིང་ There are two boys in the room. (དབྱངས་བསྟན་བཤད་འཕྲོལ་)དབྱངས་པ་ ཕྱིན་ཐུང་ཕྲིན་བཞིན་ཞིང་ དབྱངས་པ་ (དབྱངས་)དབྱངས་པ་ There is a clock and two books on the desk. (དབྱངས་)དབྱངས་པ་

2. any གང་ some དབུག་འདབྲ་ལ་བོད་པའི་ཞིང་བཞིན་ཞིང་ དབྱངས་ལེགས་བོད་པའི་ཞིང་བཞིན་ཞིང་ some གསར་སྡུག་པ་ (ཏུ་བཤད་)བོད་པའི་ཞིང་བཞིན་ some གསར་སྡུག་པ་ (དབྱངས་)དབྱངས་པ་ There are some pictures on the wall. (བོད་བསམ་བྱུགས་)དབྱངས་པ་

Are there any pictures on the wall? (བོད་བསམ་བྱུགས་)དབྱངས་པ་

There aren’t any pictures on the wall? (བོད་བསམ་བྱུགས་)དབྱངས་པ་

སྟེངས།

1. This is Room 619, isn’t it? བི་བོད་འདབྲ་ལ་བོད་པའི་ཞིང་བཞིན་ཞིང་ དེ་བོད་བསམ་བྱུགས་སྡུག་པ་དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)དབྱངས་པ་(tag-question)དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་)དབྱངས་པ་ (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་ཡུན་) You live here, don’t you? (ཐེ་རང་ཐུབ་)དབྱངས་པ་
1. There is one in it. (There’s = that is)

2. I’ll do I will. (I will)

3. Thanks a lot. (Thanks)

You don’t have any classes, do you? (You don’t have)

There are a lot of (a lot of), a number of (a number of), a box of (a box of)

Thanks a lot (Thanks)

2. I will. (I will)

A box of (a box of)

Thanks a lot. (Thanks)

A lot of (a lot of), a number of (a number of), a box of (a box of)

2. I will. (I will)

A box of (a box of)

Thanks a lot. (Thanks)
3. about लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | नसिकलै “लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु” नसिकलै “लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु” नसिकलै “लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु” नसिकलै “लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु” नसिकलै “लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु” नसिकलै “लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु”

What is the book about? (लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु) Do you know anything about him? (लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु)

बैठक
1. family name लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु
2. the United States लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु

श्लोक
no परिसरहरू याॉने लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | not any परिसरहरू याॉने लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | We have no classes in the afternoon. (लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु) We don’t have any classes in the afternoon. परिसरहरू याॉने लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु अप्रेस जसलाई दिइ धेरै दिइस्वर | परिसरहरू याॉने लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु अप्रेस जसलाई दिइ धेरै दिइस्वर नो परिसरहरू याॉने लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु अप्रेस जसलाई दिइ धेरै दिइस्वर

श्लोकस्थल
लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | Are you a student? लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | What are you? लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | Are you a boy or a girl? लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | You’re a student, aren’t you? लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु | लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु र लूसकैलिक विज्ञानीहरु

शब्दकोकृति

| buildings | families | watches | men | women |
| cities | scientists | children | radios | classes |
| days | studies | buses | brushes | matches |
বাংলা ভাষায়

1. 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th

2. TV, television, United States, U. S. A., U. N., U. K., the United Nations, the United Kingdom, first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth

বাংলা ভাষায়

1. আমি কাজ করছি। (I am working) They are having a lesson. (তারা একটি বিষয় পড়ছে) আপনি কিছু করছেন বুঝেন? (আপনি কিছু করছেন যে জানতে চান?)

2. যে অবস্থায় আমি অন্যের সাথে কথা কথিয়ে থাকি, তাকে আমি কি বলছি? (আমি কি বলছি তার কথা শুনছি?)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>বাংলা</th>
<th>ভাষাবিদ্যা</th>
<th>বাংলা ভাষায়</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>শুরুর কথা</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>work--working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>শুরুর কথা</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>study--studying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>শুরুর কথা</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>go--going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>শুরুর কথা</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>see--seeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>শুরুর কথা</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>stay--staying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>শুরুর কথা</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>have--having</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>শুরুর কথা</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>live--living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>শুরুর কথা</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>argue--arguing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>শুরুর কথা</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>take--taking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. would
2. we'd love to

(1) 1) watches 2) is watching 3) is writing 4) writes
5) does not listen 6) is listening 7) does not smoke 8) is smoking
9) have 10) are having

2. we'd love to

• 242 •
1. Which cities are you going to visit? 

2. Is this your first visit to China?
Who are talking? (লুক্তির সাথে যাত্রা)

How do you like his talk? (এটি ভাল মনে হলো না)

Let's walk around. (হাঁ সেটি করুন)

Let's take a walk around. (হাঁ সেটি করুন)

They are dancing. (তারা গান রাখছে)

Are you going to the dance? (তুমি গেল তাঁতি)

2. something कुछ thing (कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कुछ कु�)

3. such a beautiful day. (এই যাত্রাটি ভাল মনে হলো)

The parts of speech

1. it এটিঃা | (The parts of speech)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun (n.)</th>
<th>Pronoun (pron.)</th>
<th>Adjective (adj.)</th>
<th>Numeral (num.)</th>
<th>Verbs (v.)</th>
<th>Adverbs (adv.)</th>
<th>Prepositions (prep.)</th>
<th>Conjunctions (conj.)</th>
<th>Articles (art.)</th>
<th>Interjections (interj.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>book, student</td>
<td>we, many, other</td>
<td>good, big, old</td>
<td>one, first</td>
<td>go, know, like</td>
<td>fast, very, so</td>
<td>of, in, for</td>
<td>and, but, if</td>
<td>a (an), the,</td>
<td>oh, hello</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nouns**
1. Sunday, Monday
2. TV-set

**Adjectives**
- Sunday, Monday—days of the week
- TV-set—equipment

**Verbs**
- go, know, like
- watch TV

**Interjections**
- oh, hello
Sunday, America

1. A book, an engineer, an old woman, an hour

2. A park, a house, a flower, Lhasa, a lake, a boat, a tea, a love, a song, an engineer, an old woman, an hour, a book, an engineer, an old woman, an hour

3. The work at the school keeps me busy. (There is a lake in it. They are boating on the lake.)
There are a lot of people in the park now.

4.  People

(1) They are students.

(2) France, Mary, Amdo, Gao, and the Summer Palace, the United States.

(3) Would you like tea or coffee?

(4) I received his letter on Monday.

(5) After school (the Summer Palace, the United States) out of work (France, Mary, Amdo, Gao, and the Summer Palace, the United States)

5. people: two people

Physical Training
123 one hundred and twenty-three
695 six hundred and ninety-five
430 four hundred and thirty
800 eight hundred

(1) hundred  (2) hundred
(3) hundred

What day is today? What is the date?

1. I’m going to…
2. No. 7 Building No. 7

1. May 1st May First May the First
2. June 22nd June twenty-second June the twenty-second

1) is taking  2) takes  3) isn’t studying  4) studies  5) have  6) are having
7) is taking  8) takes  9) is getting  10) gets
talk ของเขาได้ยินหรือไม่

Come, arrive, go,
He’s flying to Shanghai next week. (จะบินไปที่เซี่ยงไฮ้ถัดไป)

Are you going to the talk? (คุณจะไปฟังการบรรยายหรือไม่)

She is coming. (เขาจะมาแน่นอน)

a friend of mine mine ได้มา เขาได้มา
His family is in Shanghai, mine is in Beijing. (ครอบครัวของเขาอยู่ที่เซี่ยงไฮ้ ครอบครัวของฉันอยู่ที่ปักกิ่ง)

If you don’t have a pen, you can have mine. (ถ้าคุณไม่มีปากกา ฉันจะให้คุณ)

This is not your watch. It’s mine. (นี่ไม่ใช่นาฬิกาของคุณ นี่คือของฉัน)

theirs 他们的ที่ 他们的 ของมัน ของพวกเขา
take Room 305 ไปพักที่ห้อง 305
come, arrive, go, He’s flying to Shanghai next week. (จะบินไปที่เซี่ยงไฮ้ถัดไป)

1. what do you think of …? คุณคิดว่า … ตื่นเต้นมากหรือไม่

I think … (ยินดีมาก)

2. Take Room 305 ไปพักที่ห้อง 305
come, arrive, go, He’s flying to Shanghai next week. (จะบินไปที่เซี่ยงไฮ้ถัดไป)

3. เขาได้ยินหรือไม่ ได้ยินหรือไม่ ได้ยินหรือไม่
1. She's leaving for home. (miss /miz/, take /teik/, he /hi/)
2. He missed the train to Beijing. (miss /miz/, take /teik/)
3. I'll work till ten. (till /till/)

1. things /θɪŋz/, car /kɑːr/, park /pɑːk/, far /fɑːr/, star /stɑːr/
2. you all /juː ðəˈɔːl/
tomorrow. (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) He may want to go. (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) You must do it this week. (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ)

We may leave for Xi’an on June 1st. (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) May I come in? (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) Yes, you may. (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) No, you may not. (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) May I come in? (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) He may come today. (Perhaps he will come.) (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) He may not be right. (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ)

shall/will + একান্ত

I’ll be back tonight. (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) Who will go with me? (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) We shall/will may একান্ত in একান্ত and একান্ত (the simple future tense) একান্ত.

shall/will + একান্ত

I’ll be back tonight. (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) Who will go with me? (ষ্ণ্ণ একান্ দুই লিঙ্গ) We shall/will may একান্ত in একান্ত and একান্ত (the simple future tense) একান্ত.
1. plan, hope, try सम्बन्धित आयोजनाने, "to + अप्रत्यय" हेच्या आरोपी कार्यक्रमाची संग्रहणांसाठी | हॅप्स | hope to do something (अनुवादकाची समज) Try to do something. (अनुवादकाची समज) आम्ही आज रात्री हेच्याकडे जाता आहे त्याच्या कारणाने आम्ही हेच्या सहाय्याचे म्हणून सूचनांसाठी जात होता| हॅप्स | I hope to see you soon. (अनुवादकाची समज) Try to come back tonight. (अनुवादकाची समज) ही आणि काही जास्तीत आणि सध्याच्या समयाने आम्ही थेंबता येईल आहे. (अनुवादकाची समज) |

2. shall हेच्या कार्यक्रमाची संग्रहणांसाठी, आम्ही हेच्याकडे जाता आहे त्याच्या कारणाने आम्ही हेच्या सहाय्याचे म्हणून सूचनांसाठी जात होता| हॅप्स | We shall come tomorrow (अनुवादकाची समज) shall हेच्या कार्यक्रमाच्या संग्रहणांसाठी, आम्ही हेच्याकडे जाता आहे त्याच्या कारणाने आम्ही हेच्या सहाय्याचे म्हणून सूचनांसाठी जात होता| हॅप्स | I shall pass the exam! (अनुवादकाची समज)

प्रारंभिक

1. ठीक will हेच्याकडे आवश्यकता हेच्याकडे जात होता त्याच्या कारणाने हेच्या कार्यक्रमाची संग्रहणांसाठी आपल्याच्या चर्चेत आहे त्याच्या कारणाने हेच्या सहाय्याचे म्हणून सूचनांसाठी जात होता| हॅप्स |

2. you know हेच्या कार्यक्रमाची संग्रहणांसाठी, हेच्या सहाय्याचे म्हणून जात होता| हॅप्स | He’s my brother, you know. (अनुवादकाची समज) It’s going to rain, I think. (अनुवादकाची समज) हॅप्स |

3. go swimming हेच्या कार्यक्रमाची संग्रहणांसाठी, हेच्या सहाय्याचे म्हणून जात होता| हॅप्स | go boating. (अनुवादकाची समज) go shopping (अनुवादकाची समज) हॅप्स |

4. do some reading हेच्या कार्यक्रमाची संग्रहणांसाठी, हेच्या सहाय्याचे म्हणून जात होता| हॅप्स | do some washing, do some shopping हेच्या कार्यक्रमाच्या संग्रहणांसाठी हेच्या सहाय्याचे म्हणून जात होता| हॅप्स |

आयोजनाची

At half past eight हेच्याकडे आता हेच्या सहाय्याचे म्हणून जात होता त्याच्या कारणाने हेच्या सहाय्याचे म्हणून सूचनांसाठी जात होता| हॅप्स |
1. can

- PT classes (tag questions)
- raise

2. A

3. •

- Physical Training

- 

- You know him, don’t you? You don’t like it, do you? (You don’t like it, do you?)

- may

- (tag questions)

- on Saturday afternoon

- Let me have your attention, please.

- “Put your hand in the afternoon (morning, etc.)” (Put your hand up)

- May I help you?
2. How much is it? (Looking for price)  Can you answer this question?  May I come here? (Looking for place)

3. Here you are.  Can you answer this question?  (Looking for price)  May I carry your bag?  (Looking for place)

4. You’re welcome.  Can you answer this question?  I will come.” (Looking for place)

lovely  toothbrushes  universities  places  women

buses  cities  radios  children
classes  families  months  teeth
watches  factories  days  men
toothbrushes  universities  places  women

May I carry your bag? (Looking for place)  May I make a suggestion? (Looking for place)

Can I …? Can you …?

Can you answer this question?  (Looking for price)  Can you come here?  (Looking for place)

Can’t  (aux, v.)

lovely  toothbrushes  bell  ring  sweetly  toothbrushes

1. Can I carry your bag? (Looking for place)  Can you answer this question?  I will come. (Looking for place)

2. Can you answer this question?  I will come. (Looking for place)

May I make a suggestion? (Looking for place)
I don’t know English. (দৃঢ়দৃষ্টিতে কি বলবেন)

Shall we go there? (হাঁ সর্বাধিক চান তারাকে যাবেন)

She will join us. (হাঁ তিনি আমাদের সাথে যেতে চান)

Would you like to join us? (হাঁ তারা আমাদের সাথে যেতে চান)

Can you swim? (হাঁ তারা পায়ে যেতে পারেন)

May I go with you? (হাঁ আমি তোমাদের সাথে যাবো)

You must get there tomorrow. (হাঁ আমি সেখানে যেতে হবেন)

শ্রীবর্মণগুপ্ত

শিশামাল

Japan বুলের হর্সে যাচ্ছেন তুমি পাটিয়ে দিন তুমি বল তুমি কোনো সময় যা হয়েছে (সমুদ্রতটে হয়েছে)

ণীবিশিষ্ট Japanese স্পেনীয় অর্থনীতিযোজনা নিয়ন্ত্রণ He is a Japanese (হাঁ মার্কিন যুক্তরাষ্ট্রের) a Japanese, many Japanese, the Japanese অয় ইংরেজি Spanish হাঁ স্পেন ক্যান্ট লিঙ্গের বয়স্ক হিয়ালর হয়েছে

কুপসে হিন্দুস্তানী যাচ্ছেন তোমাকে a Spaniard হাঁ পরিবারের সদস্য অন্যদের মাঝে paniards পাটিয়েছি Swedish হাঁ কৃষিকার উল্লেখযোগ্য Swedish Swede হাঁ Swedes হিয়াল

শ্রীবর্মণ
little হাঁ কুপসে হিন্দুস্তানী পাটিয়েছি a little হাঁ পরিবারের সদস্য অন্যদের মাঝে

শ্রীবর্মণ
text 255

1. শ্রীবর্মণ অর্থনীতিকর্মের সময় প্রায় অনেক সময় শ্রীবর্মণের কাছে পাটিয়েছি দেখতে Come in. (সমুদ্রতটে) Be here at 7. (সমুদ্রতটে) Don’t forget (সমুদ্রতটে) জীবনী ঘটে নির্জন Don’t মানে মাটির পাটিয়েছি এই সময় প্রায় অনেক সময় please পাটিয়েছি Please write to me. (র'
2. must not
3. don't leave us. (don't)
4. May I go now? (may)
5. Make the bed.

1. Can, may, must

May I go now? (may)

Peter may know it. (may)

She may not like it. (may)

mustn't (mustn't)

You mustn't leave the room. (mustn't)

must (must)

Must I do it? (must)

Yes, you must. (must)

No, you needn't. (needn't)

I need your help. (need)

Don't tell her, please. (don't)

She may not like it. (may)

Peter may know it. (may)

mustn't (mustn't)

May I go now? (may)

No, you needn't. (needn't)
2. Call up I’ll call you up tomorrow. (লেখিক হবে) যাবে না।

2. Call up I’ll call you up tomorrow. (লেখিক হবে) যাবে না।

### শব্দম্যূলধাতু

| 1) watches | 6) teaches |
| 2) goes    | 7) flies    |
| 3) brushes  | 8) misses   |
| 4) studies  | 9) copies   |
| 5) does     | 10) plays   |

### শব্দবুলভাষ

1. flight attendant ডিউট্যাস চেকার বলুনোন কর্মচারী।

2. dinner ডিনার রাত জোর করে খেলুন।

3. French, Italian ফ্রান্স, ইটালি।

### লেখককে বলুন

have to হবে।

have to হবে।

She has to get back tonight. (হে স্টিন ো আপনি নির্দেশ নিতে হবে।) You’ve got to go and see the teacher. (আপনি হবে যে যে কমিয়ে এলে আপনি দেখতে হবে।) I must stop smoking. (আপনি হবে পিস্টিয়ান স্টপ করতে হবে।)
1. have to जरूरी है और दर्ज भए हैं (the simple past tense) दर्ज भए हैं। दर्ज भए हैं। Do we have to
do Exercise 3? (संबंधित पर भूमिकाएं का संबंध) Do you have to go now? (ठीक
संबंधित पर भूमिकाएं का संबंध)

2. have to जरूरी है और दर्ज भए हैं। दर्ज भए हैं। You don’t have
to tell Beima. (संबंधित पर भूमिकाएं का संबंध)

रात्यांकन

1. भीम कंगाला नामक रीति-रूपिका रात्यांकन प्रकार भीम कंगाला नामक रीति-रूपिका रात्यांकन प्रकार रात्यांकन प्रकार रात्यांकन प्रकार
रात्यांकन प्रकार।

2. भीम कंगाला-ing रात्यांकन भीम कंगाला-ing रात्यांकन भीम कंगाला-ing रात्यांकन भीम कंगाला-ing रात्यांकन भीम कंगाला-ing रात्यांकन।
She is trying to translate it into Spanish. (रात्यांकन कंगाला-ing रात्यांकन।)
We often go swimming in summer. (रात्यांकन कंगाला-ing रात्यांकन।)
I like watching TV. (रात्यांकन कंगाला-ing रात्यांकन।)
She enjoys working here. (रात्यांकन कंगाला-ing रात्यांकन।)

रात्यांकन रीति-रूपिका

वीजाशा

1. country वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन।
I love my country. (रात्यांकन कंगेन।)
She likes living in the country. (रात्यांकन कंगेन।)

2. cake वन्याशा वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन। वन्याशा कंगेन।

रात्यांकन

1. शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन। शैली कंगेन।

Did I study? (I did/didn’t study)  You did not (didn’t) study. (Didn’t/didn’t study)

I did not (didn’t) study. (I didn’t/Didn’t)

Did you study? (Did you study? Did he study?)
He did not (didn’t) study.  (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v) Did they study? (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

Did we study? (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)  They did not (didn’t) study. (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

We did not (didn’t) study. (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

Did they study? (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)  They did not (didn’t) study. (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

1. have a good time  (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

2. I think so.  (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

home  (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)  Let’s go home. (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

3. When did you come home? (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

Where is your home? (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)  (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

They love their new home. (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)  (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

She isn’t at home. (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)  (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

1. altogether  (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)

How much is it altogether? (湟仺elor巴仺尞)v)
2. both were students. Both of us are from England. (Both of the rooms are on the second floor.) I want both of them. (Both girls are new students.) Both books are interesting. (I'll take both rooms.)

3. have got She has got a new recorder. (How many English magazines have you got? I haven't got any picture-books.)

1. be & could

1) was 2) was 3) were 4) was 5) was 6) were 7) was 8) were 9) was 10) were

Our homework is corrected by the teachers.
When it rained it was very quiet in the neighborhood. Who sits in front of your apartment? There were a few trees in front of the house. Was it a fine day? It is summer now. Have a rest. Have a bath. Have a try.

1. Have a look at it. Have a good sleep. Have a walk.

2. neighborhood neighbor

3. in front of Who sits in front of you? There were a few trees in front of the house. Is it very quiet here? Have a try.

What time is it? It is summer now. Does it often rain there? Was it a fine day? Is it very quiet here?

1. Have a look at it. Have a good sleep. Have a walk.

2. neighborhood neighbor

3. in front of Who sits in front of you? There were a few trees in front of the house. Was it a fine day? Is it very quiet here?

Have a rest. Have a bath. Have a try.

1. Have a look at it. Have a good sleep. Have a walk.

2. neighborhood neighbor

3. in front of Who sits in front of you? There were a few trees in front of the house. Was it a fine day? Is it very quiet here?
2. What is …like? ดีไหมคะ? 

ดีใจ

1. Tupelo ตูเปลโล มิสซิสซิปปี นิวอัลส์
   2. things ข้าวต้องจัดให้ดี บ้าง
      How are things at home? (ดีใจ)

3. Hollywood ฮอลลีวูด
   4. Presley, Memphis, the U. S. Army, Hollywood แพเรสลีย์ แมนเนสซิส ทหาร
      ทหารอเมริกัน ฮอลลีวูด

ที่มา

1. then ขณะนั้น
2. the day before yesterday วันก่อนวาน
3. be interested in สนใจ
4. memorize (learn …by heart) จำได้ดี

5,000,000  5,000,000  5,000,000  5,000,000  five million
160,000,000 one hundred and sixty million
1,000,000,000 one billion
120,000,000,000 one hundred and twenty billion.
1. 每次起床前, 他总要预先准备好所有必需的物品。他把所有的物品放在一个小盒子里, 拿着盒子走到床前, 把盒子放在床边, 然后轻轻地坐起来。

2. 他从家出发去上班, 他先坐公共汽车, 然后在市中心换乘地铁。

3. 他喜欢在周末的时候去海滩, 他会在那里游泳和晒太阳。

4. 他的工作让他经常出差, 去不同的城市, 他总是带着一个大行李箱。

5. 他不善于与人沟通, 他总是保持沉默, 不愿意表达自己的想法。

6. 他喜欢读书, 特别是历史类的书, 他觉得可以从中学到很多东西。

7. 他喜欢养花, 他说花可以让他心情愉快。

264
At the age of 13 he moved to Memphis. (লস অ্যাঞ্জেলেস) (বাংলায় নতুন একটি শহরে যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া) After that, things happened quickly. (লস অ্যাঞ্জেলেস) (বাংলায় নতুন একটি শহরে যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া) (2) His songs started a new period of American music. (a new period বিশ্ব মuzিকে নতুন একটি যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া)

He died August 16, 1977 in his home in Memphis.

(his home আর্থিক সম্পদ) (লস অ্যাঞ্জেলেস) (বাংলায় নতুন একটি শহরে যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া) (3) Is this house for sale? (লস অ্যাঞ্জেলেস) He was in Shanghai last week. (বাংলায় নতুন একটি শহরে যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া) (Shanghai) She is in Class Five. (বাংলায় নতুন একটি শহরে যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া)

She is in Class Five. (Shanghai)

বিশ্বাস

1. instead of finding gold, he found ideas there for his books and stories. (বাংলায় নতুন একটি শহরে যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া) Instead of flying there, she went by train. (বাংলায় নতুন একটি শহরে যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া) She didn’t fly there. She went by train instead. (বাংলায় নতুন একটি শহরে যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া)

2. He became rich and famous. (লস অ্যাঞ্জেলেস) He became rich and famous. (বাংলায় নতুন একটি শহরে যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া)

She soon became a school-teacher. (লস অ্যাঞ্জেলেস) (বাংলায় নতুন একটি শহরে যাত্রা শুরু, পুরোটাই যাত্রা ছেড়ে দেওয়া)
1. Would you …?
Would you ring me up tonight? Would you come to our party?
2. I’d be glad to. I’d be glad to tell her (that) you rang.

be in his twenties be in her thirties be in his fifties

1) me (us, him, her, them) 2) you (her, us, me, them) 3) me (us, him, her) 4) us (me) 5) me (us, her, him, you) 6) us (me, them, him, her) 7) me (him, her) 8) you (him, her, them)

1. used to We used to work together.
2. lead

1. उपश्रेष्ठ उपश्रेष्ठ उपश्रेष्ठ
2. I have a few questions to ask. (বয়সের নজরে একটি প্রশ্ন)

3. She has lived with us since 1970. (সময়ের সহিত এক বছরে কাছে থাকিয়া)

4. He has been in bed for a few days. (কঠিন দিনের পরে নাস্তা না হকিয়া)

They have been friends for many years. (সাক্ষর দিনের পরে দুই বন্ধু হয়েছে)

They have cleaned the room. (স্তম্ভের কুচক ধরে পুনরায় ভিজার)

They have been there three times this year. (পাঁচবারে যাতে পড়েছে)

(1) এছাড়াও আর তোমাদের বাস্তব চিন্তা ও প্রশ্ন করো।

(2) তাঁদের কথা শেখেছি। (কথাটা স্বীকার করো)

(3) তাঁরা ইংরেজিতে লেখে। (গল্পগুলি লিখো)

(4) a few (যেসকল প্রশ্নের বিষয়ে)

I have a few questions to ask. (দুইপথের চিন্তা করো)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bhutanese</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Nepali</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have got it. (ཨབ་ཨི་ཨི་)</td>
<td>I haven’t got it. (ཨབ་ཨི་ཨི་)</td>
<td>Have I got it? (ཨབ་ཨི་ཨི་)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have got it. (ཨི་ཨི་ཨི་)</td>
<td>You haven’t got it. (ཨི་ཨི་ཨི་)</td>
<td>Have you got it? (ཨི་ ལེ༔ སྒྲོ་དཔོན་)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He has got it. (ཨི་ཨི་ཨི་)</td>
<td>He hasn’t got it. (ཨི་ཨི་ཨི་)</td>
<td>Has he got it? (ཨི་ རྒྱུས་)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She has got it. (ཨི་ཨི་ཨི་)</td>
<td>She hasn’t got it. (ཨི་ཨི་ཨི་)</td>
<td>Has she got it? (ཨི་ རྒྱུས་)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| We (You, They) have got it. (རྒྱུ་/རྒྱུ་/དབུ་) ཨི་ཨི་ཨི་ | We (You, They) haven’t got it. (རྒྱུ་/རྒྱུ་/དབུ་) ཨི་ཨི་ཨི་ | Have we (you, they) got it? (རྒྱུ་/རྒྱུ་/དབུ་) ཨི་ཨི་ཨི་ |}

I saw her a few days ago. (རྒྱུ་རྒྱུ་ཀྲེང་/ཕྲུང་/གིལ་ཐོབ་མིན་པོ་)

5. hear ཞྲུལ་བོད་གོང་

I often hear him sing this song. (རྒྱུ་ཐེག་མཆེན་དབུ་/ཐུབ་པ་/ཨི་ཨི་)

“hear somebody do something” (ཆེ་ཞིག་པའི་ཐེག་མཆེན་/ཐུབ་པ་/ཨི་ཨི་) ཞྲུལ་བོད་གོང་དབུ་/ཐུབ་པ་/ཨི་ཨི་ “ཞིལ་ཐོབ་ཆེ་ཞིག་” ཐུབ་པ་ ཆེ་ཞིག་ ཨི་ཨི་ ཞྲུལ་བོད་གོང་/ཐུབ་པ་/ཨི་ཨི་

6. harder སྤྱིར་(ངོ་/ངོ་/དབུ་) ཨི་ཨི་ཨི་ than དབུ་/ཐུབ་/ཨི་ཨི་ “...ཐུབ་པ་ ཆེ་ཞིག་(ཨི་ཨི་/ཨི་ཨི་/དབུ་) སྤྱིར་/ཨི་ཨི་/དབུ་ “...དབུ་/ཐུབ་/ཨི་ཨི་“

David Black speaking. ཞྲུལ་བོད་གོང་/ཕྲུང་/གིལ་ཐོབ་མིན་པོ་ David Black སྤྱིར་བོད་གོང་/ཕྲུང་/གིལ་ཐོབ་མིན་པོ

2. have a word with … ཞྲུལ་/ཕྲུང་/གིལ་ཐོབ་/སྤྱིར་/བོད་/གོང་

3. Could you take a message? ཞྲུལ་ can སྤྱིར་བོད་/ཕྲུང་/གིལ་ཐོབ་/སྤྱིར་/བོད་/གོང་ can ཞྲུལ་/ཕྲུང་/གིལ་ཐོབ་/སྤྱིར་/བོད་/གོང་|
(1) 

(2) 

(3)
### Chart: English to Tibetan Morphology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tibetan Form</th>
<th>English Form</th>
<th>-ing Morphology</th>
<th>-s Morphology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ཀྲྲ་ བོད་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ed བོད་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>-ing བོད་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>-s བོད་ལེགས་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ངོ་སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ངོ་སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ངོ་སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ངོ་སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ཤེགས་ཀྱི་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>-d ཤེགས་ཀྱི་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ཤེགས་ཀྱི་-ing ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ཤེགས་ཀྱི་-s ལེགས་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ལཾས་ོ་ རི་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ལཾས་ོ་-ed རི་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ལཾས་ོ་-ing རི་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ལཾས་ོ་-s རི་ལེགས་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ཞེས་དེ་ སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ཞེས་དེ་-ed སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ཞེས་དེ་-ing སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ཞེས་དེ་-s སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ཡ་ སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ཡ་ སྐྱེ་-ing སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>ཡ་ སྐྱེ་-s སྐྱེ་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>བོད་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>བོད་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>བོད་ལེགས་པ།</td>
<td>བོད་ལེགས་པ།</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional Notes
- བོད་ལེགས་པ།: བོད་ལེགས་པ།, ཨ་, བོད་ལེགས་པ།, ཨ་-es བོད་ལེགས་པ།, ཨ་-ing བོད་ལེགས་པ།, ཨ་-s བོད་ལེགས་པ།.
3. next door neighbor

4. the month after next, the week after next

5. have been to

What’s on?

1. my aunt’s

2. a couple of

This is Mary, my younger sister.

He has gone to Alice Springs, a small town in the center of Australia.

2. A number of

A number of people come to this city every year.

He bought a large number of books.

Only a small number of students like it.
1. We’d like to have a talk with you. (They live in different buildings.) We have different problems. (What’s the difference between the two words?)

2. Stay for another month as much as we can. (Try to eat as much as you can.)

3. See as much as we can. (Tell me as much as you can.)
1. have got

Have you got (= Do you have) a TV-set? ( الدنيايي مبيحيك للعيشة)

Who has got (= Who has) a typewriter? ( الدنيايي مبيحي يي مبرع)

He hasn’t got (= He doesn’t have) much money. ( الدنيايي مبيحيك للعيشة)

2. Return the book to me when you have finished reading it. ( الدنيايي تيي مبيحيك للعيشة)

We’ll leave when the rain has stopped. ( الدنيايي تيي مبيحيك للعيشة)

3. Two years older than Ted ( الدنيايي هيي مبيحيك للعيشة)

She is in the same class as Rose. ( الدنيايي هيي مبيحيك للعيشة)

4. Same ( الدنيايي هيي مبيحيك للعيشة)

How much is this camera? ( الدنيايي تيي مبيحيك للعيشة)

How much is it a pound? ( الدنيايي تيي مبيحيك للعيشة)
Has he got a car? No, he hasn’t got one at present.

Will he got one (=a car) next year?

one ajas "रस्तात कार नसलेला" "हा" विषयात "किंवा"

I want the red one.

Which ones do you want?

1. not any more नवे किंवा वर्यानंतर नव्हेत असेल?

He wrote a book.

2. विशेषणांकांच्या विविधतेने

1) much  2) many  3) much  4) much  5) many
6) much  7) much  8) many  9) many  10) much

274
The book was written by a soldier. (The book was written by a soldier.)

The camera was made in China. (The camera was made in China.)

The bicycle is being sent to his home by train. (The bicycle is being sent to his home by train.)

The book has been translated into many languages. (The book has been translated into many languages.)

2. Ted was most surprised. (He is not worried any more.)

Ted was most surprised. (He is not worried any more.)

They are very interested in the work. (They are very interested in the work.)

The door is closed. (The door is closed.)

The stolen bicycle (The stolen bicycle)

closed door (The door)

3. had been found (had been found)

are to be put up next year (are to be put up next year)
How are we to go there? (.sample
Who is to do the work? (sample

Germany /ˈdʒəniə/ ˈdʒəniə/ ˈdʒəniə/
German /ˈdʒəmən/ ˈdʒəmən/ ˈdʒəmən/
Spain /ˈspein/ ˈspein/ ˈspein/
Spanish /ˈspæniʃ/ ˈspæniʃ/ ˈspæniʃ/
France /fraːns/ fraːns/ fraːns/
French /fræntʃ/ fræntʃ/ fræntʃ/
Italy /ˈitaliə/ ˈitaliə/ ˈitaliə/
Italian /ˈiːtaljən/ ˈiːtaljən/ ˈiːtaljən/
Holland /ˈholənd/ ˈholənd/ ˈholənd/
Dutch /dʌtʃ/ ˈdʌtʃ/ ˈdʌtʃ/
Mexico /ˈmeksikoʊ/ ˈmeksikoʊ/ ˈmeksikoʊ/
Belgium /ˈbeɪlɪəm/ ˈbeɪlɪəm/ ˈbeɪlɪəm/
Austria /ˈɒstria/ ˈɒstria/ ˈɒstria/

Life was harder then than it is today. (sample
She is older than me. (sample
He gets up earlier than I do. (sample

She is the oldest among us. (sample
In our room he gets up (the) earliest. (ཉིལ་བཟས་བཟོ་འདི་ནང་ཉིད་ཤེས་་མཐོང་

2. གཤེར་འགྲེལ་མཁས་ཐོབ་བཟོ་འདི་ཤེས་་མཐོང་

(1) ཁུང་མོ་མོ་ཐོབ་བཟོ་འདི་ཤེས་་མཐོང་

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>形容词</th>
<th>最小</th>
<th>较小</th>
<th>最小的</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>smaller</td>
<td>smallest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>younger</td>
<td>youngest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large</td>
<td>larger</td>
<td>largest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>later</td>
<td>latest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>biggest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>thinner</td>
<td>thinnest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) ཁུང་མོ་མོ་ཐོབ་བཟོ་འདི་ཤེས་་མཐོང་

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>形容词</th>
<th>较小</th>
<th>最小的</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>busier</td>
<td>busiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>dirtier</td>
<td>dirtiest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) ཁུང་མོ་མོ་ཐོབ་བཟོ་འདི་ཤེས་་མཐོང་

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>形容词</th>
<th>更好</th>
<th>最好的</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>successful</td>
<td>more successful</td>
<td>most successful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasant</td>
<td>more pleasant</td>
<td>most pleasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>least</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. ནག་སྐད་པ་ཐོབ་

(1) millions ཉིད་ hudreds, thousand ཁུང་མོ་མོ་ཐོབ་བཟོ་འདི་ཤེས་་མཐོང་

nine hundred teachers (nine hundred teachers) six million books (six million books)

twenty thousand students (twenty thousand students)

(2) all the year round ཁུང་མོ་མོ་ཐོབ་བཟོ་འདི་ཤེས་་མཐོང་
It’s hot there all the year round. (నిక్క అవసరం తో తేడా)

They work in the fields all the year round. (అడుగు నుండి పాలు, తో తేడా)

(3) which was spoken in Italy 2,000 years ago అంటే ఈ 2,000 సంవత్సరాల పైవరు జాతి ప్రపంచంలో ప్రభావితం చేసాం

I’m as busy as you. (రెండు ప్రతిమనుంది తేడా)

I don’t speak English as well as Tenzen. (హేవవుతుంది తేడా)

1. gentleman హేవవుతుంది తేడా

2. Ladies and gentleman, attention please. (హేవవుతుంది తేడా)

1. gentleman హేవవుతుంది తేడా

2. Those students who want to go can write down their names here. (రెండు ప్రతిమనుంది తేడా)

1. which హేవవుతుంది తేడా

2. It’s a small plane which can carry seven passengers. (రెండు ప్రతిమనుంది తేడా)
We’d better catch the train that leaves at 7:30. (เรียนนั้นจะออกจากสถานีรถไฟในเวลา 7:30)

3. I met a girl, whose father is your friend. (ฉันได้พบกับเด็กหญิงคนหนึ่ง ที่พ่อของเธอเป็นเพื่อนของคุณ)

This is the room where we stayed last year. (นี่คือห้องที่เราพักในปีที่ผ่านมา)

Here are the books (that) you left here. (นี่คือหนังสือที่คุณลิ้มเลิมไว้ที่นี่)

Is this the radio (which) you bought? (นี่คือหูฟังที่คุณซื้อไว้)

They talked about the days when they were together. (พวกเขาพูดถึงวันที่พวกเขาอยู่ด้วยกัน)

This is the room where we stayed last year. (นี่คือห้องที่เราพักในปีที่ผ่านมา)

They talked about the days when they were together. (พวกเขาพูดถึงวันที่พวกเขาอยู่ด้วยกัน)

5. I met a girl, whose father is your friend. (ฉันได้พบกับเด็กหญิงคนหนึ่ง ที่พ่อของเธอเป็นเพื่อนของคุณ)

usual (สิ่งที่มักจะเกิดขึ้น) unusual (สิ่งที่มักจะไม่เกิดขึ้น) tell (เล่า) retell (เล่าซ้ำ)

un นำ รี ที่ ที่ ที่ ที่ ที่ ที่ ที่ excite (ทำให้ตื่นเต้น) exciting (ตื่นเต้น)

serve (ให้บริการ) service (บริการ)

wonder (ความลับ) wonderful (ความสวยงาม) danger (ความมี риск) dangerous (มีความเสี่ยง)

7. Welsh คือ “Wales” (มาดูประเทศในยุโรป) Welsh คือ “Wales”
1. even better... This sentence is difficult. That one is even more difficult.

He works hard. She works even harder.

2. A friend of Peter’s “Peter’s friend” is a friend of mine (his, hers, ours, theirs)

around

Are there any restaurants around? (among)

Tibetan New year is held magnificently in my hometown. The exhibition was held last week.

Rice is grown in India. This school was built in 1980.
The letter was mailed by Zhaxi. The teacher was invited by Zhoma.

The teacher corrects our homework. The package has been mailed by Bob.

Bob has mailed the package. Our homework is corrected by the teachers.

I will open the door.

I was surprised by the news.

The horses are ridden at full gallop across the grassland.

Songs are sung in both Tibetan and Chinese.

Dances are performed by men and women together.

### Vocabulary

1. **herdsman** 荒牧民 (herdsman) / 荒牧民 (herdsman)

2. **butter tea** 奶茶 (butter tea)

3. **worship** 奉献 (worship)

4. **mountain god** 山神 (mountain god)

### Notes

1. yak, cow, goat, horse 荒饲养於 (yaks, cows, goats, horses) / 荒饲养於 (yaks, cows, goats, horses)

2. female yak 女性 (female yak) / 女性 (female yak)
3. roasted barley mixed with butter, cheese, tea and a little sugar.

Would you like my smoking? (Would you take a seat? Would you like to have some tea?)

Would you mind my smoking? (Would you take a seat? Would you like to have some tea?)

1. founder

1. found

2. chanting

chant

3. lama

4. kowtowing

kowtow

1. Buddha

Buddhist

2. image

3. prayer wheel

hand operated prayer wheel

4. burning conifer needles

burning incense
শৃণুকর্ত্তরনুপ্ত

বিশেষায়িত

5. seclusion হি প্রদীপ্ত হয় গুল্ম মাধ্যমিক খীর এ সকলকে আর মুক্তচর্মে তোমাদের কেদার করিয়া to meditate প্রিয় স্বামিকের হেরিমি ক্রীড়া

6. accomplished হি তুরলীশ্বরঃ কর্মনির্বাহঃ বালায়ন হি কনিষ্ঠপালক ব্যক্তি চতুর্দশ শতাব্দীর মধ্যে একজন শিক্ষক একজন প্রশক্তিবিশিষ্ট শেষপালকের বালায়নের মন্ত্রণায় বিচারিত হওয়ার পরে। পালক। প্রাপ্ত অভিজ্ঞতার ক্ষুধায়। accomplishment কীর্তি

7. architecture হি অধ্যয়নঃ ব্যাপারার্থ্য অধ্যয়নঃ একজন প্রতিযোগী

8. administrative districts হি সামাজিক, সাংস্কৃতিক বিনির্বাহী বিষয়বিনিময় হা। district হি অত্যন্ত

ঠান এ দুয়ার অধ্যয়নঃ একজন প্রতিযোগী বিনির্বাহী বিষয়বিনিময় হা।

9. historical material হি হিন্দুধর্মের সামগ্রিক বিনিময় হা।

শ্রদ্ধায়িত

1. শৃণুকর্ত্তরনুপ্ত হি ধীর প্রশন্ত সাধন মনে প্রথম শিক্ষক প্রবৃত্তিতের মধ্যে প্রথম শিক্ষক মনে প্রথম শিক্ষকের মধ্যে প্রথম শিক্ষকের মধ্যে প্রথম শিক্ষকের মধ্যে

2. শৃণুকর্ত্তরনুপ্ত কিশোরের ক্রিয়াশালী

3. one of his ministers হি বিশেষ প্রশন্ত সাধন মনে প্রথম শিক্ষক প্রবৃত্তিতের মধ্যে প্রথম শিক্ষকের মধ্যে প্রথম শিক্ষকের মধ্যে প্রথম শিক্ষকের মধ্যে

ঠান হিন্দুধর্মের সামগ্রিক বিনিময় হা।

4. in the cause of peace হি বিশেষ প্রশন্ত সাধন মনে প্রথম শিক্ষক প্রবৃত্তিতের মধ্যে

শ্রদ্ধায়িত অন্তর্দৃষ্টিগত

বিশেষায়িত

1. altitudes হি বিশেষ প্রশন্ত সাধন মনে প্রথম শিক্ষক প্রবৃত্তিতের মধ্যে

2. efficient adaptations হি বিশেষ প্রশন্ত সাধন মনে প্রথম শিক্ষক প্রবৃত্তিতের মধ্যে adaptation হি বিশেষ প্রশন্ত সাধন মনে

ঠান হিন্দুধর্মের সামগ্রিক বিনিময় হা।

283
It is probable that wild yaks follow the calving pattern of domesticated yaks of giving birth to a single calf in alternate years.

After a gestation period of nine months, a lead yak makes the trail and the others follow in single file carefully stepping in the leader’s footsteps.

It is estimated that there are now around 10,000 wild yaks. As far east as Gansu Province, as far as New York, I traveled as far as the eastern limit of Siberia.

This means they obtain more oxygen from and this allows them to live comfortably at high altitudes.

A lead yak makes the trail and the others follow in single file carefully stepping in the leader’s footsteps.

After a gestation period of nine months, a lead yak makes the trail and the others follow in single file carefully stepping in the leader’s footsteps.

It is probable that wild yaks follow the calving pattern of domesticated yaks of giving birth to a single calf in alternate years.
Have you seen a wild yak? Have you written your homework? Have you met your new teacher? Have you been to Beijing?
a /æt/ art. एक (一)个, (一)位

a couple of  एक (一)对, (一)双, (几)个

a cup of  एक (一)杯

a few  एक (一)几个

a little  एक (一)点, 一点, 少量

a lot of  (许多, 很多)

about /əˈbaʊt/ ad.बारें  बारे अभी

abroad /əˈbrɔːd/ ad. राष्ट्रीय हाकू मे बाहर  राष्ट्रीय हाकू मे बाहर

accomplished /əˈkʌmplɪʃt/ vt. अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है

activity /ækˈtrɪvəti/ n. राष्ट्रीय हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  राष्ट्रीय हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है

AD (Anno Domini) /,erˈdiː/ n. अनो दोमिनी  एनो दोमिनी

administrative districts राष्ट्रीय धार्मिक  राष्ट्रीय धार्मिक

afraid /əˈfreɪd/ a. फिर फिर

afternoon /ˌaːftəˈnuːn/ n. अलार्ड  अलार्ड

again /ˈeɪɡen; ˈeɡəm/ ad.अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है

ago /ˈeɡəʊ/ ad. अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है

airline /ˈeəlʌɪn/ n. एयरलाइन  एयरलाइन

all /ɔːl/ a. & ad. अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है

all right  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है

all the time  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है

allergic /əˈlɜːrɪk/ adj. अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  || People can be allergic to many substances such as some foods, dust, pollen, fur or poisonous fluids from cysts. अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है || लोग अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  अभी हाकू मे पूरा हुआ है  कई वस्तुओं के लिए एक रक्म, प्रमाण, सुगंध, शरोद या राजकीय लवणों से एलर्जिक हो सकते हैं।
allergy /ˈælədʒi/ n. 敏感症

alphabet /ˈælfəbet/ n. 字母

already /ɔːlˈredi/ ad. 已经

also /ɔːlsəʊ/ ad. 也，同样

alternate years 隔年，每隔一年

alternative /ɔːlˈtɜːnətɪv/ adj. 可选择的

altitude /ˈæltɪtjuːd/ n. 海拔高度

altogether /ɔːltəˈgeðə/ 全部，总共

always /ɔːlˈwɜːz/  总是

am /əm/ vi. 是

America /əˈmerɪkə/ noun. 美国

American /əˈmerɪkən/ n. 美国人

amused /əˈmjuːzd/ a. 愉快的，高兴的

and /ænd; ən; ænd/ conj. 和，与，及

announcement /əˈnəʊnsmənt/ n. 公告，宣告

another /əˈnʌðə/ a. & pron. 另一个

another /əˈnʌðə/ a. & pron. 另外的，又一

answer /aˈnsə/ vt. 回答

any /ˈeni/ a. & pron. 任何一个，无论哪个

anyone /ˈeniwʌn/ pron. 任何人，无论谁

anywhere /ˈeniweə/ ad. 不论何处，任何地方

anywhere /ˈeniweə/ ad. 任何地方

apartment /əˈpɑːtmənt/ n. 公寓住宅，房间
apartment /əˈpaːtmənt/ n. 房间
appear /əˈpir/ vi. 出现
apple /ˈæpl/ n. 苹果
April /ˈɛpriəl/ n. 四月
archery contest 箭术赛
architect /ˈɑːktɪk/ n. 建筑师,设计师
architecture /ˈɑːktɪkərɪjuː/ n. 建筑(学)
are /ɑː/ v. 是
area /ˈeəriə/ n. 区域
army /ˈɑːmi/ n. 军队,陆军
around /əˈraʊnd/ perp. 四周,到处,附近
art /ɑːt/ noun. 艺术
at the age of 在…岁
atmosphere /ætməsfiə/ n. 气氛
remain /rɛˈmین/ vi. 遗留
attended 参加,出席
attention /əˈtenʃən/ n. 注意力
August /ˈɔːɡəst/ n. 八月
aunt /ɑːnt/ n. 姑母,姨母,伯母,婶母,舅母
aunt /ɑːnt/ n. 姑妈,伯母,舅妈,婶母
Australia /ɔːˈstreilɪə/ n. 澳大利亚
Australian /ɔːˈstreilɪən/ n. 澳大利亚
autumn /ˈɔːtəm/ n. 秋天

away (put the clothes away) /əˈweɪ/ adj. 离开,向(在)另一方

away ... /əˈweɪ/ ad. 在远处,离去

away /əˈweɪ/ ad. 在远处,离去,到远处

awful /ˈɔːfl/ a. 可怕的,糟糕的

bad /bæd/ a. 坏的,劣质的,不利的

bag /bæɡ/ noun. 包, 袋子

barley /ˈbærli/ n. 大麦,青稞

basket /ˈbɑːskɪt/ n. 篮子

basketball /ˈbɑːskɪtbɔːl/ 篮球

bath /bɑːθ/ n. 洗澡

bathe /bæt/ v. 洗浴

bathroom /ˈbɑːθrʊm/ n. 浴室, 洗手间

BBC (British Broadcasting Corporation) /ˈbiː biː ˈsiː/ n. 番

be born /ˈbɜːrn/ 出生

be called ... /ˈkæləd/ 叫作…

be out /ˈaʊt/ 不在(家)

beautiful /ˈbjuːtɪfl/ a. 美丽的

because /brˈkɔːz/ conj. 因为

become, became /ˈbeɪkəm/ 变成,成为

bed /ˈbed/ n. 床

bedroom /ˈbedruːm/ n. 卧室

before /ˈbɪfrəʊ/ prep. (在) 之前
before /bɪˈfɔː/ prep. (以前，从前，在…之前)

begin /bɪˈɡɪn/ vt. 开始

behind /bɪˈhænd/ prep. 再…之后

Belgium /ˈbɛlɡiəm/ 比利时

bicycle /ˈbaɪsɪkl/ n. 自行车

big /bɪɡ/ 大的

black /blæk/ a. 黑色的

blackboard /ˈblækboʊd/ n. 黑板

blood cells 血细胞

blue /bluː/ noun. 蓝色

boat /bəʊt/ v. 小船游玩

book /bʊk/ n. 书，书籍，本，册

bookcase /ˈbʊkˌkeɪs/ n. 书架，书柜

both /bəʊθ/ a. 两者，双方，俩

bowl /bʊl/ noun 碗

boy /bɔɪ/ n. 男孩，儿子

bread /bred/ n. 面包

breakfast /ˈbrekfəst/ n. 早餐

bring, brought (带来，拿来)

brother /ˈbrʌðə/ n. 兄弟

Buddha image 佛像

Buddhistic works 佛学经典
build /bɪld/ vt. 建造,创立
building /'bɪldɪŋ/ adj. 楼房
burning conifer needles 焚烧柏枝(刺柏)
businessman /'biznəsmən; 'biznəsmən/ n. 商人
but /bʌt; bæt/ conj. 但是,可是
butter /'bʌtə/ n. 黄油,奶油
butter sculpture 酥油花
butter tea 酥油茶
buy /bɛɪ/ vt. 购物,买
by all means 尽一切办法
cafeteria /ˌkæfəˈtɛriə/ n. 自助餐厅(食堂)
cake /keɪk/ n. 蛋糕
call (at) /kɔːl/ vt. 访问
call up 打电话给 给…打电话
calving pattern 产(犊)式
campus /ˈkæmpəs/ n. 校园
can /kæn; kæn/ v. 能,可以
Canada /ˈkænəda/ n. 加拿大
captain /'keɪptm/ n. 船长,- 机长
carry /kərri/ vt. 携带,运送
carved by hand 手工雕刻
cause of peace 为和平而…
Celsius /ˈsɛlsɪəs/ adj. 摄氏度
center /ˈsentə/ n. 中央，中心

Central Nationalities University 中央民族大学

certainly /ˈsərtnli/ ad. 当然，无疑

chair /tʃeə/ n. 椅子

chanting /tʃæntɪŋ/ v. 诵经

cheese /tʃiːz/ n. 奶酪，干酪，乳酪

chemist /ˈkemɪst/ n. 化学家

chess /tʃes/ n. 国际象棋

child(ren) /tʃaɪld, /tʃɪldrən/ n. 孩子(复数)

China /tʃaɪna/ noun 中国

Chinese /tʃaiˈniːz/ 汉语，中国人

choose (chose) /tʃuːz/ v. 选择

cinema /ˈsɪnəmə/ n. 电影院

city /ˈsɪti/ n. 城市

class /klɑːs/ n. 一节，班级

classroom /klɑːsməʊ/ n. 教室

clean /kliːn/ a. 干净的

clean /kliːn/ vt. 使干净

clock /klɒk/ n. 时钟

closet /ˈklɒzɪt/ noun. 壁橱

clothes /kləʊz/ n. 衣服
coarse grass 粗草
coated /ˈkoʊtɪd/ adj. 涂上一层的
coated with ink 涂墨水
coffee /ˈkɒfɪ/ n. 咖啡
cold /ˈkəʊld/ n. 感冒
cold /ˈkəʊld/ n. 寒冷的
cold /ˈkəʊld/ n. 寒冷
college /ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ n. 学院
come /kəm/ vi. 来, 到达
company /ˈkʌməni/ n. 公司
compare /kəmˈpɪər/ verb 比较
complete /kəmˈpliːt/ a. 完成
comrade /ˈkɒmreɪd/ 同志
conserving heat 保存热能
consonant /kɑːnsənɑːnt/ 辅音, 辅音字母
conversation /ˌkɑːnvəˈseɪʃn/ n. 对话
cope with 应付
copy /ˈkɒpi/ v. 复印, 复制, 拷贝
correct /ˈkærɪkt/ adj. 正确的
cost /kɒst/ n. 价值
counter /ˈkaʊntə/ n. 柜台
country /ˈkʌntrɪ/ n. 国家, 乡村
cousin /ˈkʌzn/ noun. 堂(表)兄弟, 堂(表)姐妹
cover /ˈkʌvər/ vt. 覆盖

cream /ˈkriːm/ n. 乳脂

crowded /ˈkraʊdɪd/ a. 拥挤的,塞满的

cyst /ˈsɪst/ n. A sac of fluid, which forms in the body and is usually damaging to health. 囊肿

dance /dɑːns/ n. 跳舞, 舞蹈

directional /dɪˈrekʃənl/ a. 方向的

dangerous /ˈdeɪndʒərəs/ a. 危险的

daughter /ˈdɔːtər/ n. 女孩, 女儿

day /deɪ/ n. 一日, 一天 ,白天

dear /dɪə/ a. & n. 亲爱的

December /ˈdɛmbər/ n. 十二月

decide /dɪˈsaɪd/ vt. 决定

decide /dɪˈsaɪd/ vt. 决定, 决心

decorated /dɪˈkɔrətɪd/ a. 装饰了的, 装修过的

degree /dɪˈɡriː/ n. 学位

deity /ˈdiːti/ n. 神

demonstration /ˌdɪmənˈstreɪʃən/ n. 示范,演示

department /dɪˈpɑːtmənt/ n. 系,部,科,局

desk /desk/ n. 桌子

desk /desk/ n. 桌子

dictionary /dɪˈkʃənri/ n. 词典

die /daɪ/ v. 死,死亡

difference /ˈdɪfrəns/ n. 差异,不同
different /ˈdifrənt/ a. 不同的
different /ˈdifrənt/ a. 不同的
dinner /ˈdɪnər/ n. 晚饭,晚餐
director /ˈdɪərəkter/ n. 主管
dirty /ˈdɜːti/ a. 肮脏的
do prostrations /ˈprəʊstrəʃənz/ v. 叩长头
doctor /ˈdɒktər/ n. 医生,大夫
dog /dɒg/ noun. 狗
domesticated yaks /dəˈmɛstɪkeɪtɪd/ n.驯养的牦牛
door /dɔːr/ n. 门
dormitory /dɔːrˈmətri/ n. 宿舍
draw /drɔː/ vt. & vi. 画(画),描绘
dress (get dressed) /dres/ v. 穿衣服
drill /drl/ n. 练习
drive /driːv/ vi. 开车,驾驶
dry /dri/ a. 干的,干燥的
during /ˈdjʊərɪŋ/ prep. 在…期间
each /iːtʃ/ a. 每一,各自的
each other 互相
eager /iːɡər/ adj. 渴望的
early /ˈeəli/ a. 早的
easy /ˈezi/ a. 容易的
eat /iːt/ vt. (eaten) 吃
efficient adaptations 有效适应能力
egg /eɡ/ n. 蛋，卵
eight /eɪt/ num. 八
eighteen /ˌeɪtɪn/ num. 十八
der /eldə/ n. (两人中)年龄较大的
electricity /ɪˈlektrɪsəti/ n. 电
eleven /ˈelɪvn/ num. 十一
else /els/ adj. 其他
encourage /ɪnˈkʌrɪdʒ/ v. 鼓励
end /end/ n. 尽头,终点,最后,最终
end /end/ noun. 最后, 最终,终点
engineer /ˈendʒərɪ/ n. 工程师
engineering /ˈendʒərɪŋ/ n. 工程学
England /ˈɛŋɡlənd/ n. 英国
English /ˈɛŋɡlɪʃ/ n. 英语
enjoy /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ vt. 享受…的乐趣, 欣赏
envelope /ɪnˈvɛləʊp/ n. 信封
especially /ˈespeʃəli/ adv. 特别,尤其
Europe /ˈjuərpɪ/ n. 欧洲
every /ˈevri/ a. 每个
every other (every other week) 每隔 (每隔一周)
everyday /'evrider/ adj. 每天
everywhere /'evriweə/ ad. 到处
examination /ɪɡˌZA:mt'neɪʃn/ n. 考试
excellent /'eksələnt/ adj. 极好的,卓越的
exciting /ɪk'satɪŋ/ a. 令人兴奋的，使人激动的
excuse /ɪk'skju:s/ vt. 原谅
expect /ɪk'spekt/ vt. 期望,要求
explain /ɪk'spleɪn/ vt. 解释,阐明
extension /ɪk'stɛnʃn/ n. （电话）分机
extinct /ɪk'stɪŋkt/ adj. 绝灭的,灭绝的
factory /'fæktəri-/ n. 工厂
farmer /'fɑ:ma/ n. 农民
father /'fɑ:ðə/ n. 爸爸,父亲
February /'fɛbruəri/ n. 二月
feel /fi:l/ v. 感觉,以为
female (female yaks) /'fɪːməl/ adj. 雌的，（雌牦牛）
festival /'festvl/ n. 节日
field /fi:ld/ n. 田野
fifth /fifθ/ num. 第五
fill (in) /fil/ vt. 填写
film /film/ n. 电影
find /faind/ vt. 找到,发现
find, found 找到,发现
fine /fain/ adj. 健康愉快的, 美好的, 优秀的
finish /'fInIS/ vt. 完成,结束
firm /fɜ:m/ n. 公司
first /fɜ:st/ num. 第一
five /fɛv/ num. 五
flat /flæt/ n. 公寓
flight /flaIt/ n. 飞
flight attendant 空中小姐
floor /flɔ:/ n. 楼层
flower /'flaʊə/ n. 花
fly /flaI/ v. 乘飞机
folktale/'f@Ukteil/ n. 民间故事
food /fu:d/ n. 食物
food /fu:d/ n. 食物, 饭
foot of a mountain 山脚
for /fɔ; for/ prep. 为,为了
for sale  待售, 出售的

foreign /fɔrən/ a. 外国的

forget /fəˈɡet/ vt. 忘记

form /fɔːm/ vt. 表格

founded /faʊndɪd/ adj. 发现, 感到

founder /faʊndər/ n. 创始人

four /fɔːr/ num. 四

fourth /fɔːθ/ num. 第四

French /frentʃ/ n. 法语, 法国人

Friday /ˈfraɪdeɪ/ n. 星期五

friend /frend/ n. 朋友

friendly /ˈfrɛndli/ a. 友好的, 友谊的

friendship /ˈfrɛndʃɪp/ n. 友情, 友谊, 朋友关系

from /frəm; frəm/ vt. 从… 自…

fruit /fruːt/ n. 水果, 果类

funny /ˈfʌni/ a. 滑稽的, 好笑的

garden /ˈɡɑːdn/ n. 花园

gas /ɡæs/ n. 煤气

gentleman /ˈdʒentlmən/ n. 先生

German /ˈdʒərnən/ a. & n. 德语

German /ˈdʒərnən/ adj. & n. 德国人, 德语

gestation period 妊娠期
get along 与(某人)保持良好的关系
get back 返回，回来
get up 起床
girl 女孩，姑娘，女儿
give 给，送给
glad 高兴
go 走
goat 山羊
good 好
good chance to experience 得经验的好机会
good time 愉快
government 政府
gracefully 优美地
grammar 语法
grandfather 祖父，外祖父
grandmother 祖母，外祖母
grassland 草原
graze 放牧
great 伟大的，卓越的
great accomplishment 伟大的成就
gregarious animals 群居的动物
grow 生长，种植
guitar 吉他
half /hɑːf/ a. & n. 半, 一半

hall /hɔːl/ n. 大厅, 会堂

hamburger /ˈhæmbɜːrɡə/ n. 牛肉饼

happen /hæpən/ vi. 发生

happy /ˈhæpɪ/ adj. 快乐的, 幸福的

hard /hɑːd/ a. 努力

hard /hɑːd/ adj. 努力

harder /ˈhɑːdər/ 更难的, 更艰苦的

harsh highlands 艰苦寒冷的高地

has got 有, 持有

have to 必须,不得不

he /hi:/ pron. 他

he takes his life 自杀

health /helθ/ n. 健康,卫生

hear /hɪə/ vt. 听到, 听见

held a festival 举行节日

hello, hi /həˈlɔʊ/ /ˈhaɪ/ interj 喂,你好

help /help/ vt. & vi. 帮助

herbs /hɜːbs/ n. 药草

herds /hɜːdz/ n. 兽群

herdsman /ˈhaːdzmən/ n. 牧人

high /haɪ/ a. 高的

hill /hɪl/ n. 小山,小丘,山岗
historical material 历史资料，历史材料

history /ˈhistri/ n. 历史

hold /həld/ vt. 拿着,握住

holiday /ˈhɒlədi/ n. 假日,假期

home /həʊm/ n. & ad. 家,家乡

home /həʊm/ n. & ad.家

hope /hɑːp/ n. 希望

horse /hɔːs/ n. 马

horse race 赛马

horse race 赛马

hospital /ˈhɒspɪtl/ n. 医院

hot /hɒt/ a. 热的,

hotel /ˈhɔːtəl/ n. 旅馆,旅社,饭店

housework /ˈhauəswɜːk/ n. 家务

how /həʊ/ adv, conj 怎样,如何

husband /ˈhaʊzbənd/ n. 丈夫

hydatid /ˈhaɪdətɪd/ n. 包虫,水泡

I /aɪ/ pron. 我

idea /ˈaɪdə/ n. 主意,想法,念头

if /ɪf/ conj. 如果,假如

immature /ɪmˈætʃər/ adj. 未成的,发育未全的

important /ɪmˈpɔːtnt/ a. 重要的,主要的
impression /ɪmˈpreʃən/ n. 印象

in /ɪn/ prep. 里

in front of (ə) 前面

in search of (ə) 寻找

India /ˈɪndɪə/ 印度

infection /ɪnˈfɛkʃən/ n. 传染病，感染

instead /ɪnˈsted/ adv. 代替, 更换

interested /ɪnˈtrɛstɪd/ a. 感兴趣的

interesting /ɪnˈtrɛstɪŋ/ adj. 有趣的

interesting/ˈɪntrəstɪŋ/ adj. 有趣的，令人关注的

intestines /ɪnˈtestɪnz/ n. 肠

invitation /ɪnˈvɪtəʃən/ n. 邀请

invite /ɪnˈvɑːt/ v. 邀请

is /ɪz/ v. 是

island /ˈaɪlənd/ n. 岛, 岛屿

Italian /ɪˈtæljən/ n. 意大利人

Italy /ˈɪtəli/ n. 意大利

jacket /ˈdʒækɪt/ noun. 夹克，短上衣

January /ˈdʒænjuəri/ n. 一月

Japan /dʒəˈpæn/ n. 日本

Japanese /dʒəˈpæniːz/ n. 日语, 日本人
job /dʒɔb/ n. 工作

join /dʒɔɪn/ vt. 加入,和…做伴

journey /dʒɔrni/ n. 旅行

July /dʒuˈleɪ/ a. 七月

June /dʒuːn/ n. 六月

just /dʒʌst/ a. 仅仅,只是

kind /kaɪnd/ n. 种类

king /kɪŋ/ n. 国王,君主

kitchen /ˈkɪtʃɪn/ n. 厨房

kite /kaɪt/ n. 风筝

know /nəʊ/ n. 知道,认识

Kumbum ཆུ་མུད། 塔尔寺

Labor Day holiday རིགས་ཐོན་ཏུ་ཤིང་། 劳动节假期

Ladakh བྲག་ཡུལ། 拉达克

lady /ˈleɪdi/ n. 女士

lake /leɪk/ n. 湖

Lama /laːma/ n. 喇嘛

land /lænd/ vi. 降落,着陆

language /ˈlaŋgwɪdʒ/ n. 语言

large /lɑːdʒ/ a. 大的, 巨大的

larva /ˈlɑːvə/ n. 幼虫

last /lɑːst/ a. 最终的
last /ˈlaːst/ adj. 最终，最后的
later /ˈleɪtə/ adj. 之后，以后
later /ˈleɪtə/ adj. 更后的，后面的
Latin /ˈlætɪn/ n. 拉丁语
lead /li:d/ n. (2S) 过（生活）
lead yak 蠍子的牦牛
leap year 跳年
learn /lɜːn/ vi. 学习
leather boots 皮靴
leave (for) …. /liːv/ v. 前往到…; 到…去
lecture /ˈlektʃə/ n. 演讲
left /left/ a. 剩余的
lemon /ˈlemən/ n. 柠檬
lesson /ˈlesn/ n. 课程
letter /ˈletə/ n. 信
lichen /ˈlaɪkən/ n. 青苔，苔藓
life /laɪf/ a. 生命
life span 生命，生命期限
lift (lift a box) /lɪft/ n. 举起，提高
like /laɪk/ prep 喜欢
like /laɪk/ prep 相似的，同样的
line /laɪn/ vi. 线，电话线
listen /ˈlɪsn/ vi. 听
live (live in) /lɪv/ vi. 居住
live /lɪv/ vi. 居住
liver /ˈlɪvər/ n. 肝脏
liverworm 肝虫
livestock /ˈlɪvəstʊk/ n. 家畜,牲畜
living language 应用语言,现用的语言
living room 客厅,起居室
local /ˈləʊkl/ adj. 地方的,乡土的
local /ˈləʊkl/ adj. 地方的,乡土的
located 位于,坐落于,
London /ˈlʌndən/ n. 伦敦
long /lɒŋ/ a. 长期的,长的
long-sleeved 长袖的
love /lʌv/ vt. 喜爱,爱
love to 喜爱,热爱
lovely /ˈlʌvli/ adj. 可爱的,有趣的
lucky /ˈlʌki/ a. 幸运的,好运的
lunch /ˈlʌntʃ/ n. 午餐
magnificent /ˈmægnɪfɪsnt/ adj. 宏伟的,华丽的
mainly /ˈmeɪmlɪ/ adv. 主要地,大体上
major (in) /ˈmeɪdʒər/ vi. 专业
make /meɪk/ vt. 制造,进行
makes the trail 留踪迹,足迹,脚印
man /mæn/ n. 男人
many /meni/ 很多
map /mæp/ n. 地图
March /mA:tS/ n. 三月
married /mærid/ adj. 已婚的
marvelous /mA:v@l@s/ adj. 惊奇的，了不起的
May /meI/ n. 五月
may /meI/ v. 可能，也许，可以，准许
me /mi:/ pron. 我
meat /mi:t/ n. 肉
meeting /mi:tIN/ n. 开会
memorize /mem@raIz/ v. 记住，记忆
mend /mend/ v. 修理，修补
message /mesidʒ/ 消息，信息
middle /mɪdl/ adj. & n. 中间，当中，中央
mile /maɪl/ n. 英里
milk /mɪlk/ n. 奶，乳
milk /mɪlk/ n. 牛奶，乳
million /ˈmɪljən/ n. 百万
mine /maɪn/ pron. 我的
mine /maɪn/ pron. 我的
ministers /ˈmɪnɪstə(r)s/ n. 大臣
minute /ˈmɪnɪt/ n. 分,分钟
miss /mɪs/ vt. 怀念, 想
modern /ˈmɒdn/ a. 现代的
moment /ˈməʊment/ n. 瞬间
Monday /ˈmændər; -di/ n. 星期一
money /ˈmʌni/ n. 钱
month /mʌnθ/ n. 月
more /mɔː/ adv. 更
most /mɔːst/ a. 多数的,大部分的
mother /ˈmʌðə/ n. 妈妈, 母亲
motto /ˈmʌtəʊ/ n. 座右铭,格言
something good and helpful. 座右铭,格言
mountain god 土地神,山神
move /muːv/ v. 搬家,
movement /ˈmuːvmənt/ n. 运动
movie /ˈmuːvi/ noun. 电影
much /mʌtʃ/ a. & ad. 许多, 大量
museum /mjuˈziːəm/ n. 博物馆
music /ˈmjuːzɪk/ n. 音乐
musical /'mjuːzɪkl/ a. 音乐的
must /mʌst/ n. 必须
mutton /ˈmʌtn/ n. 羊肉
my /maɪ/ pron. 我的
name /nēm/ vt. 名字
nasty /ˈnæsti/ adj 令人讨厌的,险恶的
National Day holiday 国庆节假期
nationality /ˈnæʃənæləti/ n. 国籍
nearly /ˈnɛəli/ ad. 附近的
need /niːd/ n. 需要
neighbor /ˈnerbə/ n. 邻居
neighborhood /ˈnerbəhʊd/ n. 附近,邻居
Nepal /ˈnepl/ n. 尼泊尔
nephew /ˈnefjuː; ˈnevjuː/ noun. 侄子,外甥
Netherlands /ˌneɪdləndz/ n. 荷兰
never /ˈnevə/ ad. 决不,永不
new /njuː/ a. 新的
new /njuː/ adj. 新的
New Words six /sɜːks/ num. 六
New Year’s Holiday 新年假期
newspaper /ˈnjuːzpeɪpə/ n. 报纸
next /ˈnekt/ adj. (下一个的)
nice (Nice to meet you.) /nais/ a. นวล | นวล (นวล | นวล) 令人愉快的, 使人高兴的, (见到你高兴)
niece /nǐs/ noun. น้อง | น้อง 侄女, 嫡女
nine /nam/ num. ๙ 九
no /nəʊ/ น้อย | น้อย 不, 无, 不是
no /nəʊ/ น้อย | น้อย 不, 无
nomadic /nəʊˈmædɪk/ n. น้อย | น้อย 游牧的
noodles (a bowl of noodles) /ˈnuːdls/ นูดลิ่ง | นูดลิ่ง 面条 (一碗面条)
north /nɔːθ/ นอร์ท | นอร์ท 北, 北部
northeast /ˈnɔːrəst/ นอร์ | นอร์ 东北
not /nɔt/ น้อย | น้อย 不, 没, 不是
not any more น้อย | น้อย 再不; 比…多
not soon forget น้อย | น้อย 不会很快忘记
novel /ˈnɒvl/ นัวลิ่ง | นัวลิ่ง 小说
November /nəʊˈvɛmbə/ นПетербурก | นПетербурก 十一月
number /ˈnʌmbə/ vt. นับ | นับ 号码
number /ˈnʌmbə/ vt. นับ | นับ 号码
nurse /nɜːs/ นัวร์ | นัวร์ 护士
o’clock /əˈklɒk/ น. บ. | บ. 点, 点钟
ocean /ˈoʊʃn/ นัวชั่น | นัวชั่น 大海, 海洋
October /ɔkˈtoʊbə/ น. นาคม | น. นาคม 十月
of นิยม | นิยม 属于 (某事物) 的, (某物) 的
of course นิยม | นิยม 当然
office /ˈɒfɪs/ น. นิยม | นิยม 办公室
official /ˈɔfɪl/ n. 官员, 公务员

often /ˈɒfn; tʃfən/ ad. 经常

OK /ˌɑʊˈkeɪ/ a. & ad. 好, 对, 行

old /əʊld/ a. 年老的

old /əʊld/ adj. 年老的

olive /ˈɒlv/ n. 橄榄

on /ən/ prep. & ad. 在…上

one /wʌn/ adj. 一

only /ˈɒnli/ a. 只,仅仅

only /ˈɒnli/ adj. 只, 仅仅, 才

or /ɔː/ conj. 或

orange /ˈɔrɪndʒ/ n. 桔子,橙子

other /ˈʌðə/ adj. & pron. 其他

over the New Year Holiday 新年假期

over there 那边

overseas /ˌɔʊvəˈsiːz/ ad. 海外的,外国

own /əʊn/ n. 自己的

paint (paint a picture) /peɪnt/ n. 给…上油漆 画画,描绘

palace /ˈpæləs/ n. 宫殿

Palace of Unchanging Compassion 永久慈悲宫

parasite /ˈpærəsɪt/ n. 寄生虫

parents /ˈpeərənts/ n. 父母亲

park /pɑːk/ n. 公园
park /paːk/ n. 公园
particularly /paʊtɪkjiːəli/ adv. 独特地, 显著地
pass /paːs/ vt. 通过
passenger /pæsɪndʒər/ n. 旅客, 乘客
passive voice 被动式
passport /'pɑːspɔːt/ n. 护照, 通行证
past /paːst/ a. & n. 过去的, 超过
pay /peɪ/ vt. 支付, 付清
payment /'peɪmənt/ n. 付款, 报酬
pen /pen/ n. 钢笔
pencil /'pensl/ n. 铅笔
people /piːpl/ n. 人 (复数)
performed 动词过去式 表演, 演出
perhaps /pə'heps, prəheps/ ad. 或许
period /'pəriəd/ n. 一段时间
permission /paːrɪmɪʃn/ n. 许可, 同意
phone (telephone) number 电话号码
photograph /foʊtɔːgræf/ n. 照片, 相片
piano /'piənəʊ/ n. 钢琴
pick /pɪk/ vt. 摘
picnic (have a picnic) /'pɪknɪk/ n. 野餐 (去)野餐
pictorial /ˈpɪk.trə.riəl/ n. & a. 画报，有图片的，用图片表示的
picture /ˈpɪk.tʃər/ n. 画，照片，图画
pilgrim /ˈpɪlgrɪm/ n. 朝圣者
pilot /ˈpaɪlət/ n. 飞行员
ping pong 乒乓球
place /pleɪs/ n. 地方，地点
plan /pleɪn/ n. 计划，打算
plane /pleɪn/ n. 飞机
play /pleɪ/ vi. 玩，打（篮球等）
plesant /ˈpleznt/ a. 令人愉快的
please /pliːz/ vi. 请
poaching /ˈpɔʊtʃɪŋ/ n. 偷猎
poem /ˈpəʊm/ n. 诗，诗歌
policeman /ˈpɒli.ˌsmən/ n. 公安人员，警察
political /pəˈlɪtɪkl/ adj. 政治上的，政治有关的，政权的
poor /pɔː/ a. 可怜的，贫穷的
poor /pɔː/ a. 贫穷的
poor diet 乏味的食物，简贯的食物
pound /ˈpaʊnd/ n. 英镑
precaution /prɪˈkəʊʃən/ n. 预防
present /ˈpreznt/ a. 现在的
probable /'probəbl/ adj. 很可能的，大概的
probably /'probəbli/ ad. 或许，大概
problem /'prəbləm/ n. 问题
professor /prə'fesər/ n. 教授
program /'prəʊgræm/ n. 节目
publishing house 出版社
put /pʊt/ vt. 放,摆
quarter /'kwɔ:ta/ n. 一刻钟
question /'kwɛʃən/ n. 问题
quickly /'kwɪkli/ ad. 快地,迅速地
quiet /'kwaiət/ a. 安静的
radio /'reɪdiəʊ/ n. 收音机
rain /rein/ n. 下雨
rainy /'reini/ a. 下雨的,多雨的
raise /reɪz/ v. 提出(问题)
rapid decline 快速下降，迅速减少
receive /rɪ'zi:v/ vt. 收到
record /'rekərd/ n. 唱片
record /'rekərd/ vt. 录音
recorder /'rekədər/ n. 录音机
recording /'rɛkədɪŋ/ noun. 录
red /red/ noun. 红色
reform movement 改革
refuse /rɪˈfjuːz/ vt. 拒绝

reign /rɛn/ n. 统治

relative adverbs 关系副词

relative pronouns 关系代词

religion /rɪˈlɪdʒən/ n. 宗教

religious and political commentaries (关于)政教的解说词(书)

request /rɪˈkwest/ vt. 要求,请求

rest /rest/ vi. & n. 休息

rest /rest/ vi. & n. 其余

restaurant /ˈrestrɒnt/ n. 餐厅, 饭馆

return /rɪˈtɜːn/ vi. 回来

review (to review lessons) /rɪˈvjuː/ vt. 复习

review /rɪˈvjuː/ vt. 复习

rice /raɪs/ noun. 米

rich /rɪtʃ/ a. 富裕, 有钱的

ridden at full gallop 最大步幅

rifle /ˈraɪfl/ n. 步枪

right /raɪt/ a. 正确的

ing, rang 打(电话)

road /rɔːd/ n. 路

roasted barley mixed with butter, cheese, tea and a little sugar (zamba) 糌粑

room /ruːm; rom/ n. 房间
room /ruːm; rom/ n. 房间

rule /ruːl/ noun. 规则, 规律

safety /ˈsefti/ n. 安全, 保险

same /seɪm/ a. 同一的, 相同的

Saturday /ˈsætədər; -di/ n. 星期六

school /skuːl/ n. 学校

school /skuːl/ n. 学校

school-girl /ˈʃkoʊlɡɜːrl/ (中小学)女生

scientist /ˈsaɪəntɪst/ n. 科学家

scripture /ˈskrɪptʃər/ vt. & vi. 经典, 佛经

season /ˈsiːzn/ n. 季节

seclusion /ˈsrɛkljuːzn/ n. 隐居, 僻静

second /ˈseknəd/ num. 第二

secretary /ˈsekrətri/ n. 秘书

see /siː/ vt. & vi. 看, 看到, 看见

seldom /ˈseldəm/ ad. 很少, 不常

sell, sold /səl/ v. 卖, 销售

send, sent, sent /send/ /sent/ n. 送, 寄, 送去

sentence /ˈsentəns/ n. 句子

September /ˈseptɪmber/ n. 九月

serve /sɜːv/ vt. 服务, 供应

serve /sɜːv/ vt. 服务

service /ˈsɜːvɪs/ v. 服务
seven /ˈsevn/ num. 七

seventeen /ˈsevnˈtiːn/ num. 十七

several /ˈsevrəl/ a. & n. 几次(个)

several /ˈsevrəl/ adj. & n. 几次(个) 数个

shall /ʃəl; ʃæl/ v. (ʃəl) 将，应该

she /ʃi:/ pron. 她

sheep /ʃiːp/ n. 羊

sheep /ʃiːp/ n. 羊

sheepskin ˈʃiːpˌskɪn/ 羊皮

shirt /ʃɜːt/ noun. 衬衫

shop /ʃɒp/ n. 商店

shopping /ˈʃɒpɪŋ/ n. 购物

shower /ˈʃauə/ n. 淋浴

shun contact ʃuŋkɒntɪkt 避免接触

shut /ʃut/ vt. 关闭

sight /saɪt/ n. 情景，景象

significance /ˈsɪgnɪfɪkəns/ n. 意义，含义

simple /ˈsɪmpl/ a. 简单的，朴素的

since ... /sɪns/ conj. & prep. 自⋯以来

sing (sɪn) 唱

single /ˈsɪŋɡl/ a. 单人的

single file ˈsɪŋɡl flɪ 一列纵队，单行

sister /ˈsɪstə/ n. 姐妹
sit /sɪt/ v. 坐

skill /skɪl/ n. 技能,本领

slaughter house or abattoir | 屠宰场 | A building where animals are killed for food.

sleep /slɪp/ vi. 睡觉

sleepy /slɪpɪ/ adj. 想睡的,嗜眠的

small /smɔːl/ a. 小的

smile /smɪl/ vi. 微笑

smoke /smɔʊk/ vi. & vt. 烟,冒烟

snow /snɔʊ/ n. & v. 雪

so /səʊ/ a. 所以, 因而

soldier /ˈsɔldər/ n. 军人

some /sʌm; sʌm/ ad. & n. 有些, 一部分, 若干, 少量

something /ˈsʌmθɪŋ/ pron. 某事, 某物, 某东西

son /sɔn/ n. 儿子

song /sɒŋ/ n. 歌, 歌曲

Songtsen Gampo 松赞干布

soon /suːn/ ad. 不久,即可

sorry (I'm sorry.) /ˈsɒrɪ/ a. 对不起

sound /sɔund/ n. 声音

south /sɑːθ/ 南方

Spain /ˈspæn/ n. 西班牙
Spanish /ˈspænɪʃ/ adj & 西班牙语
speak /spiːk/ vi. 说话，谈话
speak /spiːk/ vi. 说，讲
spinning prayer wheel 转经筒
spring /ˈsprɪŋ/ n. 泉
spring /ˈsprɪŋ/ n. 春天
stamp the ground 跺（脚）
start /stɑːt/ vt. & vi. 开始
start /stɑːt/ vt. & vi. 开始
start off 出发
state /steɪt/ n. 州，邦
station /ˈsteɪʃn/ n. 车站，位置
stay /stεi/ vi. 呆，停留，留宿
steal, stole, stolen /stiːl/ vt. 偷盗
still /stɪl/ ad. 还要，还，依然
stop /stɑːp/ vi. 停止
story /ˈstɔːri/ n. 故事，小说
storybook /ˈstɔːrɪbʊk/ n. 故事书
strange /ˈstrændʒ/ a. 陌生的，奇怪的
street /striːt/ n. 街道
student /ˈstjuːdnt/ n. 学生
study /ˈstʌdi/ vt. 学习
subject /ˈsʌbdʒekt/ a. 学科，科目
successful /sək'sesfl/ a. 成功的，圆满的
such /sʌf/ a. 如此的，这类的，这样的
summer /ˈsʌmə/ n. 夏
Sunday /ˈsʌndi/ -di/ n. 星期天
supper /ˈsʌpə/ n. 晚餐
sure /ʃʊər/ a. 肯定的，有把握的，确信的
surefooted  脚踏实地的，稳当的
surprised /saˈprɪzd/ a. 惊讶的,意外的
sweat glands 汗腺
Sweden /ˈswiːdn/ n. 瑞典
sweep /swi:p/ v. 打扫
swim /swim/ v. 游泳
symptom /ˈsɪmptəm/ n. 症状

table /ˈteɪbl/ n. 桌子
take a seat 请坐，坐下
take the animals out 在外放牧
talk /tɔːk/ n. 演说，讲话
talk /tɔːk/ vi. & vt. 说话，谈话，谈论
Tang Dynasty 唐朝
tapeworm /ˈteɪpwaːrn/ n.绦虫 A parasite which attaches itself to the intestines and can travel to other organs of the body.

target /ˈtaːɡt/ n.目标

tax /tɛks/ n.税款

taxi /ˈtɛksi/ n.计程车, 出租车

tea 茶

teacher /ˈtiːtʃə/ n.老师

technical /ˈteknlɪkəl/ a.工艺的, 技术的

technician /tekˈnɪʃən/ n.技术人员

telephone /ˈtelɪfəʊn/ n.电话

television (TV set) /ˈtelɪvɪʒn/ n.电视

tell /tel/ vt.说, 告诉

temple /ˈtempl/ n.寺,神殿

ten /ten/ num.十

tent /tent/ n.帐篷

term (semester) /tɜːm/ n.学期

than /ðən; ðæn/ conj.比较, 比

thank /θæŋk/ n.谢谢, 感谢

thanks /θæŋks/ vt.谢谢, 感谢

the /ðə; ði; ðiː/ art.的 (用于名词前指已知的事物)

theirs /ðeəz/ pron.他们的

them /ðəm; ðem/ pron.他们

then /ðen/ ad.然后
these /ðiːz/ pron. 这些
thing /θɪŋ/ n. 东西
think /θɪŋk/ v. 想, 思考, 认为
third /θɜːd/ num. 第三
thirty /ˈθɜːti/ num. 三十
this /ðɪs/ pron. 这
Thonmi Sambhota สิมัยสิทธิ์ 通弥散布扎
those /ðəʊz/pron. 那些
three /θriː/ num. 三
throughout /θruːaut/ adv, prep 到处, 始终
Thursday /ˈθɜːzdi/ n. 星期四
Tibetan /ˈtɪbətən/ adj. & n. 藏族, 藏人, 藏语, 藏族的
Tibetan Plateau 青藏高原
Tibetan robe 藏式长袍
tidy /ˈtaɪdi/ a. 整洁的,整整齐齐
till /tɪl/ vt. 直到,至
time /ˈtaɪm/ n. 时间
tired /ˈtaɪəd/ a. 疲劳的,疲乏的,累的
to /təʊ; tuː; tuː/ prep. 往,向,到
to hold (a festival) 举行
to perform 表演,演出
together /təˈgɛðə/ ad. 一起
together /təˈgɛðə/ adj. 一起,一块儿
tomb /tu:m/ n. 坟墓

tomorrow /təˈmɔrəʊ/ n. 明天

tonight /təˈnaɪt/ n. 今晚

too /tu:/ ad. 太,非常

too /tu:/ adj. 也

took pictures 照相

toothbrush /ˈtʌθbrʌʃ/ n. 牙刷

toothpaste /ˈtʌθpeɪst/ n. 牙膏

town /taʊn/ n. 城镇,市镇

traditional /trəˈdɪʃənl/ adj. 传统的

train /trem/ n. 火车

transcription /trənˈskrɪpʃən/ n. 转录,抄本

translate /trænzˈleɪt/ vt. 翻译

translation /trænzˈleɪʃən/ n. 翻译

travel /trævl/ vi. 旅行

tree /tri:/ n. 树

trip /trɪp/ n. 旅行

try /trɪ/ vt. 试,试图

Tsongkhapa བློ་གཤིས་པ། 宗喀巴

tube /tjuːb/ n. 管子,筒

Tuesday /ˈtʃuːzdi/ n. 星期二

TV /ˈtiːv/ n. 电视
TV set (television) 电视
twelve /ˈtwɛlv/ num. 十二
twenty /ˈtwenti/ num. 二十
twenty /ˈtwenti/ num. 二十
two /tuː/ adj. 二
U.S.A. (United States of America) 美国
uncle /ˈʌŋkl/ n. 叔叔,舅舅,姑父
uncle /ˈʌŋkl/ n. 伯父,叔父,舅父,姑丈
uncontrolled /ʌnˈkəʊntəld/ adj. 未受控制的,自由的
under /ˈʌndər/ prep. 在…之下
understand /ˌʌndərˈstænd/ vt. 知道,理解
unite /juːˈnɑːrt/ vi. 联合
university /juːnəˈvɜːsəti/ n. 大学
unusual /ˌʌnˈjuːʒuəl/ adj. 异常的,不平常的
use to 以前曾是
usually /ˈjuːʒuəli; -əlɪ/ ad. 通常,平常
usually /ˈjuːʒuəli; -əlɪ/ adj. 通常地,平常地
valid /ˈvælɪd/ a. 有效的
valuable collection 珍贵收藏
various /ˈveriəs/ adj. 各种各样的
very /ˈveri/ adj. 很,非常
very much 很,非常,十分
village /ˈvɪlɪdʒ/ n. 村庄
violent /vaɪələnt/ adj 猛烈的, 强暴的

visit /vɪzɪt/ vt.访问，探望，参观

vowel sounds 元音声

Wales /weɪlz/ n. 威尔士

walk /wɔːk/ a.走,步行

wall /wɔːl/ n. 墙

want /wɒnt/ vt. 想要,要,希望

wardrobe /wɔːdrəʊb/ n. 衣柜

wash (wash the clothes) /wɔʃ/ v. & n. 洗(衣服)

wash /wɔʃ/ v. & n. 洗

watch (wristwatch) /wɔtʃ/ n. 手表

watch /wɔtʃ/ vt. 看

way /weɪ/ n. 路

we /wi:/ pron. 我们

weather /ˈwɛðə/ n. 天气

Wednesday /ˈwenzdər,-di/ n. 星期三

week /wi:k/ n. 星期,周

weekend /wi:kˈend/ noun. 周末

welcome /ˈwelkəm/ vt. 欢迎

well /wel/ n. 好,非常,完全地

Welsh /welʃ/ adj. 威尔士的

western /ˈwestərn/ a. 西方的

what /wɒt/ pron. 什么
when /wen/ conj. 在…的时候
when /wen/ conj. …的时候
where /wea/ adj. 哪儿
which /witʃ/ pron. 哪一个
who /hu:/ pron. 谁
whole /hɔul/ n. 全体,全部,所有的
why /wai/ ad. 为什么
will /wɪl/ aux. 将,将要,会,要,
window /ˈwɪndəʊ/ n. 窗户
winter /ˈwɪntə/ n. & a. 冬天
with /wɪð; wɪð/ prep. 和(一起),同,跟; (某物)旁边
withered leaves and twigs 枯萎的叶子和枝条
woman /ˈwʊmən/ n. 女人
wonder /ˈwʌndər/ vt. 惊奇,想知道
wonderful /ˈwʌndəfl/ a. 奇妙的,极好的
wood-block 木板的
word /wɜːd/ n. 单词
work /wɜːk/ n. 工作
worker /ˈwɜːkər/ n. 工人
world /wɜːld/ n. 世界,地球
worried /ˈwʌrid/ a. 焦虑的,闷闷不乐的
worry /ˈwʌri/ v. 担心
worship /ˈwɔːʃip/ adj. 拜神,敬神
would /wʊd/ aux. v. (would be) 将要,会
would like  would have 要, 肯
woven /ˈwʌvn/ a. 织物的 编织的
wrestling match 摔跤比赛
write /raɪt/ vt. & vi. 写
writer /ˈraɪta/ n. 作者
yak /jaːk/ n. 牦牛
year /jaːr/ n. 年, 年龄
Yellow Sect of Tibetan Buddhism 格鲁派,黄教
yogurt /ˈjɒɡət/ n. 酸奶
you /juː, juː/ pron. 你,你们
young /ˈjʌŋ/ adj. 年轻的
younger /ˈjʌŋər/ 较年轻的, 较小的
your /jɔːr/ 你的,你们的
zip code (postal code) 邮政编码
Phonetics

1. Practice the following sounds and words.

1) Practice the following sounds and words.
2). Read and compare. (ঢাকার যুগলকেট্টা)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[iː]</th>
<th>[ɪ]</th>
<th>[e]</th>
<th>[æ]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[piːt]</td>
<td>[pit]</td>
<td>[pek]</td>
<td>[pæk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[biːt]</td>
<td>[bit]</td>
<td>[beg]</td>
<td>[bæg]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[tiːk]</td>
<td>[tik]</td>
<td>[tek]</td>
<td>[tæk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[diːd]</td>
<td>[did]</td>
<td>[ded]</td>
<td>[dæd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kiːp]</td>
<td>[kip]</td>
<td>[kept]</td>
<td>[kæp]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[giːk]</td>
<td>[gig]</td>
<td>[get]</td>
<td>[ɡæt]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(2) Practice the following sounds and words.

| aː | afternoon, car, cart, star, park, Carter, basket, pass, glass, classroom |
| cː | box, fox, dog, mop, cock, sock, lock, clock, watch, bottle, comrade, Bob, John, tomorrow |
| uː | good, book, hook, notebook, bullet, do, boot, stool, room, broom, school, spoon, shoe, ruler, afternoon, you |
| œː | bus, cup, mug, gun, truck, drum, brush, bucket |
2) Read and compare. (ซื้อและเปรียบเทียบ)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[a:]</th>
<th>[ʌ]</th>
<th>[o:]</th>
<th>[ə]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ka:t]</td>
<td>[kʌt]</td>
<td>[kɔ:t]</td>
<td>[kət]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ba:n]</td>
<td>[ban]</td>
<td>[pɔ:t]</td>
<td>[pət]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ba:k]</td>
<td>[pʌk]</td>
<td>[tɔ:t]</td>
<td>[tət]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ha:m]</td>
<td>[hʌm]</td>
<td>[sɔ:t]</td>
<td>[sət]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[u:]</th>
<th>[ʊ]</th>
<th>[æ]</th>
<th>[ʌ]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ku:p]</td>
<td>[kʊk]</td>
<td>[kæt]</td>
<td>[ka:t]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[fu:d]</td>
<td>[fʊd]</td>
<td>[fæt]</td>
<td>[fa:t]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[bu:t]</td>
<td>[bʊt]</td>
<td>[pæk]</td>
<td>[pa:k]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[pu:p]</td>
<td>[pʊp]</td>
<td>[bæk]</td>
<td>[ba:k]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) ซื้อและเปรียบเทียบ

1) Practice the following sounds and words. (ซื้อและฝึกให้เป็นพูด.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[ə:]</th>
<th>her, bird, shirt, nurse, purse, turnip</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[ə]</th>
<th>latter, mister, miner, driver, afternoon, teacher, husband, soldier, peasant, student</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1) Practice the following sounds and words.

| [ei] | name, latter, plane, plate, spade, radio, table, train |
| [əʊ] | boat, bowl, notebook, hoe, stove, hello, tomorrow |
| [ai] | I, fine, night, wife, bike, kite, knife, rifle, my, goodbye |
| [au] | how, cow, plough, blouse, house |
| [ɔɪ] | boy [bɔɪ], toy [tɔɪ], coin [kɔɪn], oil [ɔɪl] |
| [ɜː] | here [hɪə], hear [hɪə], beer [bɪə] |
| [θɛ] | their [θɛr], Mary [ˈmæri] |
| [uə] | poor [pʊə], sure [ʃʊə], tour [tʊə] |

2) Read and compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[ə]</th>
<th>[ɔ]</th>
<th>[e]</th>
<th>[ei]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[fɒ:]</td>
<td>[fəʊ]</td>
<td>[lɛtə]</td>
<td>[lɛɪtə]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[bəʊθ]</td>
<td>[bəʊθ]</td>
<td>[sped]</td>
<td>[sped]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[dæt]</td>
<td>[dæt]</td>
<td>[get]</td>
<td>[geɪt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kək]</td>
<td>[kɔk]</td>
<td>[tek]</td>
<td>[teɪk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[gət]</td>
<td>[gæt]</td>
<td>[det]</td>
<td>[deɪt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[həst]</td>
<td>[həʊst]</td>
<td>[fed]</td>
<td>[fed]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3) Read and compare.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[əu]</th>
<th>[au]</th>
<th>[ɔ:]</th>
<th>[ai]</th>
<th>[ə]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[kəu]</td>
<td>[kau]</td>
<td>[kɔ:]</td>
<td>[kait]</td>
<td>[kæt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[həu]</td>
<td>[hau]</td>
<td>[hɔ:]</td>
<td>[gaid]</td>
<td>[gæd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[rəu]</td>
<td>[rau]</td>
<td>[rɔ:]</td>
<td>[taip]</td>
<td>[tæp]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[təut]</td>
<td>[taut]</td>
<td>[tɔ:t]</td>
<td>[daid]</td>
<td>[daɛd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[bəut]</td>
<td>[baut]</td>
<td>[bɔ:t]</td>
<td>[paip]</td>
<td>[pæp]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ʃəud]</td>
<td>[ʃaud]</td>
<td>[ʃɔ:t]</td>
<td>[baik]</td>
<td>[baɪk]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[e]</th>
<th>[æ]</th>
<th>[ə:]</th>
<th>[ai]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[bet]</td>
<td>[baɪt]</td>
<td>[baːt]</td>
<td>[bait]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[fed]</td>
<td>[feɪt]</td>
<td>[faːt]</td>
<td>[fait]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[rest]</td>
<td>[ræt]</td>
<td>[raːsp]</td>
<td>[rait]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[tʃek]</td>
<td>[tʃæt]</td>
<td>[tʃaːt]</td>
<td>[tʃæt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[step]</td>
<td>[stæk]</td>
<td>[stæt]</td>
<td>[stæt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[bed]</td>
<td>[baɪd]</td>
<td>[baːk]</td>
<td>[bait]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. उपमेयखण्डकल्पनाची अध्येया

1) वर्णमालेची अर्थमूळी [p] [b] [t] [d] [k] [ɡ]
2) वर्णमालेची अर्थमूळी [s] [z] [ʃ] [ʒ] [f] [v] [θ] [ð] [r] [h]
3) वर्णमालेची अर्थमूळी [ts] [dz] [tʃ] [dʒ] [tr] [dr]
4) वर्णमालेची [m] [n] [ŋ]
5) वर्णमालेची [l]

2. उपमेयखण्डकल्पनाची अध्येया

1) वर्णमालेची [p] [b] [m] [w]
2) वर्णमालेची [f] [v]
3) वर्णमालेची [θ] [ð]
6) ศุกร์ [f] [z] [tʃ] [dʒ]  
7) ศุกร์ [j]  
8) ศุกร์ [k] [ɡ] [n]  
9) ศุกร์ [h]  

(3) ศุกร์<br>1) มูลนิธิ [p] [t] [k] [s] [ʃ] [f] [θ] [ts]  
2) มูลนิธิ [b] [d] [ɡ] [z] [ʒ] [v] [ð] [dz]  

2. ศุกร์<br>1) มูลนิธิ  

1) Practice the following sounds and words.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[ɹ:]</th>
<th>[i]</th>
<th>[e]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>see, evening,</td>
<td>is, it, morning, evening,</td>
<td>very, well, Helen,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeep,</td>
<td>pick,</td>
<td>pen,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree,</td>
<td>sickle,</td>
<td>pencil,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheep,</td>
<td>pig,</td>
<td>bed,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>street,</td>
<td>big,</td>
<td>fish,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wheel,</td>
<td>fish,</td>
<td>picture,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key</td>
<td>river, village,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>city,</td>
<td>window</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Read and compare. (พิมพ์คำที่เกี่ยวข้อง)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[f]</td>
<td>fine, afternoon, fish.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[v]</td>
<td>very, evening, village</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[θ]</td>
<td>thank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ð]</td>
<td>these, that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[s]</td>
<td>see, miss, sickle, sock, saw, stool, school, this, bus, pencil, desk, pass, glass, horse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[z]</td>
<td>is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ʃ]</td>
<td>she, shoe, shirt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ʒ]</td>
<td>pleasure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[r]</td>
<td>room, river, very, comrade, tomorrow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[h]</td>
<td>hello, how, horse, hall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[tʃ]</td>
<td>bench, teacher, watch, picture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[dʒ]</td>
<td>jeep, John, jacket, village, soldier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ts]</td>
<td>boats, boots, shirts, skirts, plates, kites, carts, baskets, bullets, streets, jackets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[dz]</td>
<td>birds, comrades, spades, blackboards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[tr]</td>
<td>tree, train, tractor, truck, street</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[dr]</td>
<td>driver, drum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[m]</td>
<td>morning ['mɔːnin], my [mai], name [neim]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[n]</td>
<td>night [nait], name [neim], nurse [nɔːs], fine [fain], son [sʌn]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[n]</td>
<td>morning ['mɔːnin], evening ['tə:vənə], thank [θæŋk]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>later ['lɛtə], hello ['heɪəu], London ['lʌndən], Helen ['helɪn]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>well [wel], hospital ['hɒspɪtəl], school [skuːl], Hall [hɔːl]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[w]</td>
<td>well [wel], wife [waɪf], worker ['wɔːkə], what [wɒt], wheel [wiːl]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[j]</td>
<td>you [juː], your [jɔːr], young [jʌŋ]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

Read and compare.

Table One.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[i]</th>
<th>[e]</th>
<th>[e]</th>
<th>[ei]</th>
<th>[ə:]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ɪt]</td>
<td>[ɛt]</td>
<td>[bet]</td>
<td>[beɪt̑]</td>
<td>[biːt̑]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[mɪd]</td>
<td>[mɛt]</td>
<td>[pet]</td>
<td>[peɪd̑]</td>
<td>[piːt̑]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[nɪt]</td>
<td>[nɛt]</td>
<td>[met]</td>
<td>[meɪt̑]</td>
<td>[miːt̑]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[pɪn]</td>
<td>[pɛn]</td>
<td>[net]</td>
<td>[neɪm]</td>
<td>[niːd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[tɪn]</td>
<td>[tɛn]</td>
<td>[led]</td>
<td>[leɪd]</td>
<td>[liːd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[dɪn]</td>
<td>[dɛn]</td>
<td>[bel]</td>
<td>[beɪl]</td>
<td>[piːl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[tɪnt]</td>
<td>[tɛnt]</td>
<td>[sel]</td>
<td>[seɪl]</td>
<td>[siːl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[mɪnt]</td>
<td>[mɛnt]</td>
<td>[ʃed]</td>
<td>[ʃeɪd]</td>
<td>[ʃiːt̑]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[tɪm]</td>
<td>[tɛm]</td>
<td>[fel]</td>
<td>[feɪl]</td>
<td>[fiːl]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table Two.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[e]</th>
<th>[æ]</th>
<th>[ə]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[b]</td>
<td>[bet]</td>
<td>[bæt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[d]</td>
<td>[ded]</td>
<td>[dæd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[s]</td>
<td>[set]</td>
<td>[sæt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[n]</td>
<td>[net]</td>
<td>[næp]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[l]</td>
<td>[led]</td>
<td>[læt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[pel]</td>
<td>[pæl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[t]</td>
<td>[tems]</td>
<td>[tæp]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[m]</td>
<td>[met]</td>
<td>[mæt]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table Three.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[əʊ]</th>
<th>[ɔ]</th>
<th>[əʊ]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[bɔt]</td>
<td>[bɔt]</td>
<td>[bəʊ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[dəʊp]</td>
<td>[dəp]</td>
<td>[dəʊt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[pəʊz]</td>
<td>[pəʊz]</td>
<td>[pəʊdə]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kəʊt]</td>
<td>[kəʊt]</td>
<td>[kəʊtʃ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ʃʌd]</td>
<td>[ʃɔt]</td>
<td>[ʃəʊt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[lʌd]</td>
<td>[lɔd]</td>
<td>[lʌd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[tʊn]</td>
<td>[tʊn]</td>
<td>[tʊn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kəʊz]</td>
<td>[kloʊz]</td>
<td>[klɔʊdz]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table Four.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>[a:]</th>
<th>[ʌ:]</th>
<th>[o:]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ka:t]</td>
<td>[kʌt]</td>
<td>[kɔt]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ʃa:k]</td>
<td>[ʃʌt]</td>
<td>[ʃɔp]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[klə:k]</td>
<td>[klʌb]</td>
<td>[klɔk]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ba:k]</td>
<td>[bʌks]</td>
<td>[bɔks]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[dʒa:]</td>
<td>[dʒʌɡ]</td>
<td>[dʒɔb]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[baːz]</td>
<td>[bʌs]</td>
<td>[bɔs]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[baːm]</td>
<td>[bʌmp]</td>
<td>[bɔm]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[baːn]</td>
<td>[bʌn]</td>
<td>[bɔnd]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table Five.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>[əu]</th>
<th>[u:]</th>
<th>[u]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[bəut]</td>
<td>[buːt]</td>
<td>[buk]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[həu]</td>
<td>[huː]</td>
<td>[huk]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[rəuu]</td>
<td>[ruːd]</td>
<td>[rum]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kəul]</td>
<td>[kuːl]</td>
<td>[kud]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[pəul]</td>
<td>[puːl]</td>
<td>[pul]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ʃəu]</td>
<td>[ʃuː]</td>
<td>[ʃud]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[nəut]</td>
<td>[nuːs]</td>
<td>[nuk]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>